

THE ENGLISH HORSMAN



THE ENGLISH HORSMAN



75 m

The English
HORSMAN
And Complete
Farrier:

Directing all Gentlemen and others
How to Breed, Feed, Ride and Diet
all Kind of HORSES, whether
for War, Race, or other Service.

WITH A
Discovery of the Causes, Signs and Cures
of all Diseases, both Internal and External,
Incident to Horses: Alphabetically digested.

WITH THE
Humours of a SMITHFIELD

Jockey.

By *Robert Almond*, a well known and skil-
ful Farrier of the City of *London*, Practising
therein above forty five years.

L O N D O N,
Printed for *Simon Miller*, and are to be Sold at the
Sign of the Star at the West-end of *St. Paul's*. 1673.



43h



TO THE READER.

Reader,

I Do here present you with a book which with modesty I may say is worthy of your perusal ; it contains almost whatever is useful and necessary, as to an Horse, and all his diseases. I confess in my younger days I was not a little curious, and have been at some expence for translations out of several Languages as to the several practises of divers Countreys in the profession wherein I was bred. I have made it my study and practice out of all to select what I have here for the good of my Countrey delivered with great pains and long experience. I must confess I owe much to my famous Countrey men Mr. *Blondevil*, Mr. *Markham*, and Mr. *Le Grey*, for that great light and

A 3 knowledg

The Preface.

knowledg I have received from them.

I have very much lamented the several books I have read in Horsemanship, which only discourse of Cures without giving any account either of the cause or sign of the disease, which I am sure hath been the occasion of the loss of many a good Horse. What I have done is as plain as I could; read and judg.

*Your affectionate Coun-
treymen,*

Robert Almond.

The

The Table.

A.

A Ge of an Horse to know	48, 49, 50
Anticor, its cure	70
Anbury or Wart	B. 139
Breeding Horses, best method	4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9
Bones of a Horse	47
Blood letting	59. 137. 138
Bots, Cause and Cure	72
Blood staling, its cure	73
Blowing with difficulty, its cure	74
Belly ach, cause and cure	75
Broken Wind, a certain Cure	76
Broken Lungs or Rotten, how to know and cure	77
Bloody Flux, cause and cure	106
Brittle Hoof, cause and cure	144
Bone Spavin	145
Back Swankt or Swolu	147. 150
Burning by a Mare, its cure	147
Button Farcy	148
Bunches of all sorts, how to cure	149
Blood Spavin, its cure	150
Barbs, cause and cure	151. 265
Botches in the Groin, cause and cure	153
Blood to staunch	C. 277
Colts, when to geld	9
Colts, when to break	10
Completion of an Horse, how to judg.	20, 21

A 4

Choice

The Table.

<i>Choice directions in bleeding or Physicking</i>	
<i>Horses</i>	55
<i>Cold, the best cure</i>	78
<i>Consumption, cause and cure</i>	78, 79
<i>Colt Evil, cause and cure</i>	79
<i>Clysters proper for Horses, and how to apply them</i>	81, 82, 83, 84
<i>Canker in the mouth, cause and cure</i>	154
<i>in the head</i>	155
<i>Curb, cause and cure</i>	157
<i>Crest fallen, cause and cure</i>	158. 273
<i>Casting the Hoof, a remedy</i>	158, 159
<i>Camery, its cause and cure</i>	160
<i>Cronet, a certain cure</i>	161
<i>Canker in the Withers, cause and cure</i>	161
<i>Casting the hoof, how to do it</i>	162

D.

<i>Directions for chusing good Horses</i>	15, 16, 17. 346, 347
<i>Diseases in Horses, and their causes</i>	50, 51, 85
<i>Dropfie, cause and cure</i>	84
<i>Drenches for all diseases</i>	85, 86
<i>Diseases of the Gall, cause and cure</i>	87, 88
<i>Defence against Flies</i>	163
<i>Dangerous sickness, its cause and cure</i>	164, 165

E

<i>Dislocation of joints</i>	167
<i>Exerements of an Horse to judg</i>	56
<i>Ears imposthumated cause and cure</i>	89
<i>Enterfering, cause and cure</i>	168, 169
<i>Eyes</i>	

The Table.

Eyes hurt by blow, cure certain	171
Eye Film, Pin or Web	171, 174
Eye Canker	172
Eyes watred	175
Eye bitten	175
Eyes imposthumated	175
Eyes inflam'd	F. 217
Feeding of Horses for Race, choice observations	26, 27
Feavers of all sorts, their cures	59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66. 93
Frenzie, cause and cure	91. 334
Falling Evil	91
Foundring in the belly	92
Flux in Horses, cause and cure	95
Farcy, cause and cure	148
Falling of the Fundament, cause & cure	177
Fetlock hurt, cause and cure	178, 179
Frettizing, a certain cure	180
Frothy hoof, a cure	180
False quarter in a hoof, its cure	182
Fig, a disease on the heel, its cure	185
Fistula, cause and cure	187, 188, 189, 190
Frets, Cause and cure	190, 191
G.	
Glanders, cause and cure	95, 96, 97
General Rules for Sores and outward Maladies to be observed by the Horse Chirurgion	133, 134
Gaunt belly, how to remedy	152
Gra-	

The Table.

Gravelling, cause and cure	191, 192, 193
Gourged or gourded legs	193
Gelding of Horses and Colts, what to be observed, and time when	195
Garget, cause and cure	196
Gauled back, its cure	198
Gigs, cause and cure	200
Glanders, a Pill	262
Grease molten	H. 305
Head Ach, cause and cure	98. 205
Hungry evil, cause and cure	98
Horse Hide bound, cause and cure	99
Horse lean, how to fatten	100, 101. 213. 345. 357
Horse shot, to cure	144
Hurle bone disjoined	203
Hide bound, cause and cure	204
Heels troubled with the Mellet	206
Hips hurt or strained	211
Hough bonny, cause and cure	212
Halting by stroke or strain, its cure	213
Hair to make slick and smooth	339
Hair, how to take off of any part	340
Horse, how to make to follow his master, or find him out amongst a multitude	342
Horse to make nimble at the spur	343
Hair to make grow soon, thick and long	344
Horsemens observations for ordering Horses	I. 351
Instructions to accomplish a rider	22, 23, &c. Jaun-

The Table.

Jaundies, cause and cure	101
Inflamattions, how to ripen & cure	103. 217
Inflamattions about the heels, to cure	142
Ives, cause and cure	216
Itch in the tail, cause and cure	220
Interfering its cure	220
Joints grieved with ach, weakness or swelling by cold	221
Jade tired, or dull, how to make to go forward	341. 356
Though resty and heavy, to prance and caper	K. 355
Kidney infirmities, cause and cure	104
Kernels like Grapes, cause and cure	140
Knots or knobs to remove	222
Kernels in the throat to dissolve	223
Knees broken, to cure	224
Kibed heels, cause and cure	239
L.	
Loathing meat, cause and cure	105
Lask, cause and cure	106
Lips heat	210
Legs swelled, to cure	224
Leprosie, cause and cure	227. 272
Lice to clean from Horses	229
Lampas, cause and cure	230
Lave-Ear'd Horses how to remedy	232
M.	
Method of breeding Horses	4
Molten grease and fatning balls	39
	Mur-

The Table.

<i>Murrain or Plague</i>	68
<i>Molten grease, cause and cure</i>	108. 238
<i>Mourning of the chine, cause and cure</i>	108,
	109
<i>Maunge</i>	201. 235
<i>Month heat</i>	210
<i>Moon eyed Horses, its remedy</i>	173. 223
<i>Mebinder, cause and cure</i>	234
<i>Mouth sore</i>	237
<i>Mellet, cause and cure</i>	237
<i>Mortfounder'd, its cure</i>	238
<i>Mallender, cause and cure</i>	240
<i>Mourning of the chine, its cause & cure</i>	241
<i>Molt long or Molt worm, its cause & cure</i>	242
<i>Mollifiers against hardnes</i>	243
<i>Main shedding, its remedy</i>	297
<i>Mark in the mouth to counterfeit</i>	355

N.

<i>Night Mare, cause and cure</i>	110
<i>Navel gall, cause and Cure</i>	244, 245
<i>Nose running</i>	247
<i>Neighing, how to hinder</i>	340

O.

<i>Over gorged, cause and cure</i>	111, 112, 113
<i>Over reach and over strain, its cause and cure</i>	247
<i>Oyl of Oats its soveraign virtue, and how to make it, a great secret</i>	250
<i>Old sores a speedy cure</i>	251
<i>Old Horse how to make him seem young</i>	339

The Table.

P.

<i>Praise of a Horse</i>	I
<i>Properties of a good Horse</i>	11, 12, 13, 14
<i>Pursiveness, its cure</i>	74. 116
<i>Pissing blood, cause and cure</i>	115
<i>Pricking by shooing, a remedy</i>	140. 157.
	158, 159
<i>Pole evil in the Neck cause and cure</i>	251,
	252, 253
<i>Pole evil in the Head</i>	254, 255
<i>Pastern joints strained</i>	256
<i>Prick on the Crownet, its cure</i>	256
<i>Purgation, its benefit</i>	264
<i>Purgation for Surfeits</i>	264
<i>Pains near the Fetlock, its cure</i>	266, 267
<i>Plaisters</i>	274
<i>Quitter bone, cause and cure</i>	269, 270, 271
<i>Quick scab, cause and cure</i>	272

R.

<i>Rules for ordering breeding Mares</i>	348
<i>Rules for ordering Colts</i>	8, 9. 349
<i>Race Horses, how to order</i>	29, 30, 31, 32,
	33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40
<i>Rot in Horses, cause and cure</i>	118
<i>Red water and matter to take away</i>	273
<i>Ring bone, cause and cure</i>	274, 275
<i>Rats tail to cure</i>	276
<i>Bowels, how to order in any part</i>	276
<i>Ring worm</i>	317
<i>Scouring for a Horse</i>	36, 37
	Shape

The Table,

Shape of a Horse good to know	42, 43
Sinews of a Horse	46
Sneezing to cause	67
Shedding Seed, cause and cure	120
Staggers, cause and cure	121
Sleeping evil, cause and cure	122
Surfeits of all sorts, cause & cure	123, 124, 125
Staling, how to cause	126
Squinzy, cause and cure	126
Star in the forehead how to make	127
Strain in the Kidneys, its cure	147
String halt, cause and cure	156. 307
Scab on the Hoof to cure	160
Stub or Thorn, how to draw	166
Scab or Leprosie	201
Shoulder hurt or Wrench, cure	208. 279. 281
Strain or swelling	214
Shingles	234
Sore mouth	237
Sores to skin presently	268
Saddle hurt or swelling, its cure	276. 302
Swift cut	277
Stanching blood	277
Salves for all sores	278
Shoulder dislocated, its cure	280
Shoulder splat, cause and cure	282, 283
Shoulder pincht	284
Sinew sprain'd, strain'd or griev'd	285, 286
Scratches	287, 288
	Sur-

The Table.

<i>Surbating of an Horse</i>	289, 290, 291
<i>Sinew cramp, cause and cure</i>	291
<i>Strangle</i>	292
<i>Strain in the Pastern</i>	293
<i>Strain in the Coffin joint</i>	295
<i>Stifling, cause and cure</i>	295
<i>Stumbling</i>	298
<i>Stars artificial to make</i>	300
<i>Smath'd back, cause and cure</i>	303
<i>Spur galling</i>	303
<i>Selender, cause and cure</i>	305
<i>Surfeit or Grease molten</i>	305
<i>Stripe on the Eye</i>	307
<i>Swelling after bleeding</i>	308
<i>Screw or splint</i>	309
<i>Shackle gall</i> T.	310, 311
<i>Tiring on the road, a remedy</i>	128, 129
<i>Teeth pained, cause and cure</i>	265
<i>Tongue hurt, how cur'd</i>	313
<i>Tetter or Ring worm, a cure</i>	314
<i>Tail how to cut</i> V.	
<i>Veins of an Horse to know</i>	44, 45
<i>Universal medicine for all diseases</i>	69
<i>Vives in the Ears, cause and cure</i>	70
<i>Vomiting, cause and cure</i>	130
<i>Ulcers of all sorts, a speedy remedy</i>	215
<i>Universal Plaister for most sores</i>	262
<i>Venom drank, its cure</i>	318
W.	
<i>Worms how to cure</i>	73
	<i>Wind</i>

The Table.

<i>Wind Cholick, its cure</i>	131
<i>Wind broken, its cure</i>	131
<i>Wind to preserve</i>	131
<i>Warts to cure</i>	149
<i>Wens to cure</i>	149
<i>Weeping Hoof a cure</i>	180
<i>Withers grief, its cure</i>	201, 202
<i>Wild Fire, its cure</i>	321
<i>Warts in the Eye</i>	322
<i>Wens to remove</i>	322, 323, 336
<i>Worms of all sorts, a cure</i>	324, 325, 326, 327, 328, 329
<i>Wind gall, a cure</i>	330, 331, 332
<i>Weakness in the back</i>	333
<i>Water Farcy</i>	334
<i>Wolf teeth, a cure</i>	319

Y.

<i>Tellows vide Glanders</i>	
<i>Tard mattering, to cure</i>	337



A Brief

Encomium

OF AN

HORSE

By way of Introduction.

OF all four-footed Beasts I cannot find any so useful to man, and so serviceable as is that generous Creature we call an Horse. Neither doth the pleasure man receives by him, come any ways short of the profit he reaps thereby. In peace he serves to till the ground; and as he takes great pains in causing the earth to bring forth its fruits in its proper season; so when produced, he labours no less to lodge them where his master shall appoint. If the gallantry of his Masters spirits commands him to the War, how chearfully he obeys, and foams with impatience, till he shares in his riders self-propounded honour!

B

How

The Praise of an Horse.

How troublesome would Land-travail be, were it not for this hardy and laborious creature, who in the darkeſt night through thick and thin performs his journey, not valuing the extremity of weather? And this he ſeemeth to do out of pure gratitude to his feeder, endeavouring this way to recompence his coſt; and why not? ſince it is acknowledged by all intelligent perſons, that an Horſe is endued with great underſtanding, and, from my own experience, often knows when he hath a fool on his back. It is reported in Hiſtory, that *Bucephalus*, that famed War-Horſe, would not ſuffer any to mount him but *Alexander* the Great, who then expreſſed all imaginable pride and ſatisfaction in bearing ſo victorious a Conqueror. And that we may ſee farther, how far this Creature is naturally inclined to love man; I have read of one *Nicomedes* a King, whoſe Horſe ſo intirely loved him, as that upon his Maſters death the beaſt reſuſed his beſt beloved food, and ſo continued till he dyed.

And that we may not altogether borrow examples of this kind from forreign parts, I ſhall produce you this one and no more, obſerved in the Battel fought on *Marſton-Moor*. A Gentleman of eminent note, being at that time there mounted on an excellent Gelding, (whom he had bred up from a Colt) charged the enemy with much Gallantry; yet notwithſtanding it ſo happened that he was ſlain: he that ſlew him, obſerving his horſe to be much better than his own, alighted and ſo exchanged; the horſe immediately finding a rider on his back which
he

The Praise of an Horse.

3

he was unaccustomed to bear, and now retaining as it were a resentment for the death of his Master, began to fling and bound, and never gave off yarking till he threw his rider, and then fell to him with his heels, which he exercised so nimbly, that he gave his matters overcomer not the least opportunity to escape, and having kill'd him, left him, and ran into the body of his own party.

I know not whether this Horse might not deserve as great esteem, as such horses, who for their love and tractableness have had Statues, nay Cities erected to their memory. However I must not applaud the *Egyptians*, who have raised magnificent *Pyramids* to those, who have been eminently serviceable in their Wars. But as I must condemn, so I cannot but laugh at the preposterous folly of that *Roman* Emperour, who doted so much on a horse, that he made him a Senator.

But in truth there is so much to be said in the praise of this noble useful creature, that should I write the one tenth thereof, there would be no room for my ensuing matter. But by the way this Encomium doth not belong to all Horses, but such as are good. To the intent therefore you may reap the pleasure and profit from them, as is afore expressed, I shall advise you to be very curious in your choice and purchase. But it is not to be expected that you will ever be provided with such good horses as what are of your own breeding; wherefore that shall be the subject of the following Chapter.

CHAP. I.

The best Method of breeding Horses.

TO avoid all prolixity and impertinency, take this order as the most expedient: Let your Studd of Mares be very choice, abounding with mettle and spirit, so must your Stallions be qualified also, and let neither be defective in shape, colour and good marks. If you find any natural defect in the Stallion, endeavour to mend them in the Mare that shall be joyn'd to him, and so let what is amiss in the Mare be repaired in the Horse. As near as you can couple them young, and handsome of size, neither too large nor too small, well limb'd, and well joynted, and see that your Mare have a good fore-head, and a large Womb: and have a special care that neither of them be diseased, for that natural distemper will undoubtedly be hereditary in the Colt. The most proper age for your Mare to be covered is between three and four: from that time to fourteen a Mare will bring forth; and an Horse will be fit to cover from three to fifteen years old, and longer.

The most convenient time for covering Mares is delivered diversly. Mr *Mirkham* is of the opinion that the beginning of *March* or *May* is the fittest time: for by the coming about that time they will be prepared for the coming of Winter, *whereas those which fall after are necessitated to encounter two great enemies; that is, hunger and cold, with which the early Foal hath been before familiar.* others

Others are of opinion that *Lammas* Foals prove ever the best Horses (if they are not scantred of food) for having tryed the worst of Winter before Summer comes.

Others affirm that the most convenient time to have a Mare covered, is from the end of *May* to the beginning of *August*; for by that means the Mare shall foal at such a time when the earth hath cloathed her self in green, I mean when there is plenty of Grass; for a Mare goes eleven Months, and sometimes ten days over; and so by consequence, if the Mare be covered at the latter end of *July*, she will foal at the beginning of *June*, and so both will be well provided for against the approach of a Gut-foundring Winter.

But for my part I am clearly of the opinion of that excellent Gentleman Monsieur *De Grey*; who declares that the best time for foaling is in the dead of Winter, as either in *December* or *January*: for by long experience he hath found out contrary to other mens judgments, that from the time of the covering, to the foaling of the Mare, is just twelve months and ten days, unless it be a young Mare with her first Colt: so that if the Mare be covered about *St. Lucies day*, which is the thirteenth of *December*, then will she foal about *St. Thomas day*.

The next thing that is to be thought on, is how to couple Male and Female when they are ready to ingender. In the first place, let them be both well fed, so that they may have the greater strength to perform the work of Generation; nor will it be amiss to take blood from both the

6 The most approved Method

sides of the neck of your Mare, well nigh a pottle : let this be done seven days before she is covered ; and being thus phlebotomiz'd , the next day fasting, and the next to that give her Mugwort chopped very small, and put into a quart of milk, with an Ounce and a half of *London Treacle*, and a piece of Butter : let these be dissolved over a fire, and given the Mare warm in the morning. This drink doth not only comfort and strengthen the Matrix , but it also increaseth seed wonderfully, and inables her to retain what she hath received from the Stallion. Let the time of covering be as near as you can, either three days after the change, or three days before the full of the Moon, allotting them some convenient place where they may be two nights and a day.

The Symptoms of a Mares not conceiving after covering are these ; she will be continually neighing at the sight or hearing of any Horse ; she will piss very often, her eyes will be constantly rolling and gazing at every thing, pricking up her ears. The Symptoms of her conception are first a good stomach to her Proven-der, and that in five or six days her belly seemeth to be more lank, her skin more slick and smooth, and altering its complexion into a colour seeming more bright ; and lastly she will appear leaner than before.

Being with foal let her run in the dryest grounds, yet not so barren as that her belly should be pincht for want of convenient sustenance. Being within two months of her time let her be carefully taken up, for fear of hurting her

her foal, and kept within doors to the time of her delivery: that time being at hand, let her be kept in a warm room with good store of straw under, that in the fall the Colt should receive no prejudice by bruising. Where it is to be noted that a Mare foals standing, and let her be carefully watched, lest the Colt should come wrong. After the Mare hath foaled and licked her Colt dry, before the Colt come to suck, let some body milk the Mare, which will make her give down her milk the better, and keep the milk from clodding in the Udder. If you fear the Mare will become dry; then take some of her own Milk with some Spike or Lavender, and boil them together, then take and bathe her Udder therewith daily for the space of seven days, and this will infallibly dissolve the curd and hard knobs therein. As soon as the Mare hath foaled give her a warm Mash, adding thereunto the powder of Brimstone: after this she may safely labour, provided it be moderately, and it will conduce to the health and strength of them both.

Now for as much as some Mares for want of right ordering, become barren, I shall here instruct how all or most a Studd shall be made to prove fruitful. In the first place, if there be a suspicion that some of the Mares in the Studd after covering have not conceived, then take a fresh Stallion and a Mare or two that are eagerly desirous to be covered, and turn them together into your studd; he having covered these, the rest seeing this that did not conceive, will infallibly come to this Stallion, and so by this means

§ The most approved Method

most of the Mares will be restrained from being unfruitful.

If a Mare have a difficult labour, and there is danger in her foaling, my advice is that her nostrils be held close, so that she cannot draw her breath; but if that prevail not, then take of Madder, the quantity of a Pullets Egge, and dissolve it in a pint of stale Ale, and being warm, pour it down the Mares throat, and this will much help her delivery. If her after-birth or Secundine come not away, then take three handfuls of Fennel and as much Malmsey, and boil them together in running water; then take half a pint hereof Luke-warm, and pour it into the Mares nostrils, holding them close a little while, and this will help her; but by any means let her not eat her cleansing (which many are desirous of) for it is unwholsom, and an hindrance to her Milk.

Let not the Colt run with the Dam, less than a year; if it may stand with your convenience let it be longer, for that will strengthen the Colt. When the Colt is to be wean'd, you must so separate him from the Dam, that he may be out of her hearing, and not suffer'd to stir out of doors in sixteen days. It will be very requisite to have pasture adjoyning to the place wherein they are, but such it must be that it be neither rank nor barren, for a short sweet grass will nourish them most, and add very much to the increase of their growth: be sure that at this time they want nothing, for what they lose in the first year, they will scarcely gain in four.

At their weaning neglect not to give them
Butter

for breeding Hozles.

9

Butter and Savin for divers mornings, for that will kill that worm which otherwise will destroy them. The first Winter let not Hay be wanting, nor oats in the sheafe, or the offal of any other grain.

From two years old upward beware that in the Winter your Colt lye not wet; nor in the Summer feed on rank grass; for the first very much disheartens him, and lays him open to all manner of watry cold distempers; and the other renders him an ill shapen sloathful Beast, being always inclined (by reason of his over great quantity of flesh and fat) to catch the Glanders; and Cough upon every slight and inconsiderable cold. Wherefore your best Summer feeding for your young horses is where they are not streightned for want of ground, and that they must be forced to take pains for a belly full; and let them not cover any Mare till above five years old, for sooner will debilitate their strength, and impair their growth, with farther prejudice.

And to this end, as you separate Foals from the Dams, so you must separate the Male Colts from the Females; for frequent experience may inform you that by plentiful and full feeding the Horse-Colts have covered the Mare-Colts at a year old, to the destruction of them both.

As for gelding of Colts you may indifferently take any time from a foal of four months to fourteen years; but the best time for making of fine Geldings, is when you perceive the stones to fall, or when eleven days old; taking this course, you go a safe way to work, which will also produce most incomparable Chests. When you go about this work, let it be in the wane of the Moon,

Moon, and the Spring is the fittest season for effecting your purpose.

If you would have your Stone-Horse, Gelding, or Mare-familiar and tractable, begin with them from the first weaning to make him acquainted with you by stroking, rubbing and haltering him, leading him to water, frequently taking up his feet, and sometimes knocking his hoofs, and the like.

As to breaking of Colts to the saddle, several men, several minds; some are for breaking them at three years old, others at four; but it is the opinion of the most judicious, that that Horse which is broken at five, will hold out longer than any other, and shall not be so inclinable to diseases, nor will he easily be acquainted with the ill quality of Tiring.

By your thus prudent giving your Horse his full time before you handle him, his joynts and sinews grow strong, and are well knit together, his hoofs will grow tough, his eye-sight quick and good, his chine so strong that you cannot hurt it in reasonable riding, and will continue a good serviceable Horse till twenty six years of age.

The evil effects of taking him up sooner will plainly appear in a little time by his blindness, weakness of back, brittleness of hoof, besides his Wind Galls and Splints; and in short, before he arrives to half his age, he will appear an old horse, and rejected by all, as having seen his best days.

And that you may not be mistaken in the good properties and shape of those Colts you intend

for

for your own service, take these observations : a Colt when but five weeks old will carry the same shape then, whether good or bad (if not abused in the mean time) as he will have at five years old. If a Foal have a large shin bone that is long from the knee to the pastern, it foreshoweth a tall Horse ; the double of that space of a foal newly foaled between the knee and the withers, will be just his height when he is arrived to full growth. Take notice which of your Colts have most active spirits, wanton, ever leaping, running, and playing, and striving to out-run the rest of his fellows ; such always prove high mettled Horses : but if on the contrary you find them dull, unactive, seldome stirring, but melancholy, you may assure your self they will prove errant jades.

Lastly, to conclude my discourse of breeding horses, let me advise the owner of a good Studd not to make too early a coiling or election ; for some horses show their best shape at two years old, and lose at four ; others not till six or seven, and ever after retain it ; but sooner or later, let him preserve the best for himself ; those of incurable deformities, as Sorrances, Spavens, Ring-bones or imperfect eyes, send them to the Market.

CHAP. II.

Of the properties belonging to good Horses, as to Mark, Colour and Shape.

I Must confess, an horse may be good and serviceable, who hath neither good colour, true marks, or perfect shape ; however I would not have

12 The properties of a good horse.

have those three good properties contemned or slighted; for that Horse cannot be bad in whom those properties remain: and if an Horse well mettled, bold, and hardy, yet of a gentle condition, of a round and comely trot or pace, obedient mouthed, sure of foot, tough, strong, and easie, is to be valued and esteemed; then for certain if to these good qualifications there be added good colour, true marks, and perfect shape, I know not what will make him more considerably valuable; so that his owner shall be dayly courted to part with him at his own terms. Now to the intent you may understand what these good properties be, which belong to a good Horse, observe what an ingenious Foreigner saith of them. *There are, saith he, three of an Oxe, three of a Fox, three of a Hart, and three of a Woman: Those of an Oxe are a fair full eye, a large neck, and to be strong and short joyned: those of a Fox are to have a comely short trot, small and long ears, and a bushy tail: those of an Hart are to have lean and dry legs, to be well risen before, and a lean head: those of a Woman are to be large and fair breasted, to have a beautiful and full hair, and gentle to her Rider and Keeper.*

And to the intent I may trace the same Author farther, be pleased to take notice of these his following observations in his own words: *These Horses that have a black mane and a black tail are seldome bad. If the Sorrel have a black list along his back, and if his Mane, Tail, Knees, and Fetlocks be black also, he is generally good: the Brown-bay, Dun, Dapple-grey, and Iron-grey are usually very good. But (saith he) all Horses must have*
good

The properties of a good Horse: 13

good legs, good feet, and their Fetlocks not incumbered with too much hair; they must have quick eyes, obedient mouths, and high mettled; their legs by no means fat or fleshy, but a large belly well risen before, streight backt, and not charged with over great shoulders: he must have a thin bended neck hooking in to his breast, a good Crouper, large thighs, round well spread Buttocks, and a train well set on, a lean, dry, and thin head, a full sparkling eye, a wide Nostril, a wide, thin, and lean Jaw, a loose Trople, a well trussed body, and legs not over long; the fore-legs above the knees must be strong, flat, and large, although the lower part the same legs must be small. Thus much of the general shape of Horses; Let us next consider their Colours.

Though the *Black-Roan*, or *Black*, full of silver hairs, *Cole-Black*, *Chestnut-Black* with a *Star* in the forehead, *Dark-Bay*, *Fly-bitten*, or *White-Lyard*, be lookt on as well colour'd Horses; yet the *Brown-Bay* is to be prefer'd before them all; and therefore the *French*, with other Nations, have the *Brown-Bay* in so great esteem, that they call him *Trusty Bayard*. Now as to Colours in general, the *French* have these three in greatest estimation among them, the *Chestnut* and *Cole-Black*, but principally the *Brown-Bay*.

So much of Colours; now for the Marks: All men have a good liking to the *White Star*, and *white foot*, if the blaze be not over large, or the foot too white about the pastern, for then it is called buskend; the shine or rase down the face, if it be no broader than two fingers, ending exactly between the Nostrils, is commendable; and

if

14 The properties of a good Horse.

if it be not broader on the one side of the face than it is on the other, it is prized among the compleatest Horsemen for the best ornamental Mark an Horse can be endued withal. Different are the opinions of men concerning their feet, some praising the white on the far foot behind, others on the near foot before, others would have the white a Cross, that is, the far foot behind and the near foot before.

All skill'd in horse-flesh do affirm, that an Horse with much white on his face, raw nosed, sheath, yard, tuel, and hoofs white, skin white, and legs hosed, and wall-eyed, is for the most part weak, faint, and of a cowardly disposition, tender, and washy of flesh, subject to Rebellion, restiseness, to starting, stumbling, evil sighted, subject to tire, and let his keeper have a special care of his biting and kicking.

Let us now consider the particular shape of an Horse : In the first place it is required in a well timber'd Horse, that his hoof be black, smooth, large, dry, round, and hollow, the pasterns straight and upright, the fore-head lean and large, the eyes great, full, and black, the brows well filled, the Jaws wide, slender, and lean, the Nostrils wide and open, the mouth great, the head long and lean, the Mane thin and large, the Withers sharp and pointed, the back short, even, and plain, the sides and ribs deep, large and bearing out like the bottom of a Tray, and close shut at the huckle bone, the belly long and great, but hid under the ribs, the flanks full, yet gaunt, the rump round and plump, with a large space between the buttocks, the thighs long
and

large, the hams dry and straight, the Truncheon small, long, well set on, and well couched, the train long, not too thick, the Yard and Stones small. To describe the perfect shape of an Horse in fewer words is thus ; a broad forehead, a great eye, a lean head, wide Jaws, yet thin, slender and lean, a long high reared Neck, high reared Withers, a broad deep Chest and body, upright pasterns, and narrow hoof.

To conclude, if an Horse be well colour'd, rightly shaped, and truly marked, coming of a good breed, it is very much if his actions answer not the expectations of the most curious Horseman, so be it that the Horse hath not been spoiled either by backing or riding.

CHAP. III.

Choice directions for the electing of good Horses according to their several employments.

IF you fancy beauty, chuse the Dapple-Grey ; if for service, the Brown-bay ; for gallantry and courage, the Black with silver hairs. The unchangeable Iron-Grey, the Cole-black and Sorrel are accounted to abound with choller ; the Bright Bay, the Flea-bitten, and the Black spotted with white with blood ; the blank-white, the Yellow-Dun, the Kite-glew'd, and the Pide-bald with Phlegm ; and the Chestnut, the Mouse-Dun, the Red-Bay, and the blew-grey with melancholy. But no more of this at this present, because in the next Chapter I shall

shall treat particularly of the several complexions of Horses.

For a Souldier or a Travailer the Trot is most convenient; and herein observe the neatness of his lifting his limbs from the ground, for if he treads short, open, and even, then is his pace very commendable.

For great persons and those that love their ease, the Amble is best: if for Hunting or for an Hackney, the racking pace is most necessary.

As for a good Gallop observe this, that Horse which without lifting his feet high taketh them up nimbly from the ground, that stretching out his forelegs with the hinder followeth them nimbly, without cutting under the knee, and doth not cross or clap one foot upon another, and ever leadeth with his far fore foot, and not with the near, is the best sort of Galloper, both for speed and comeliness.

Concerning the stature of an Horse, it must be left to the judgment of the Buyer, to fit himself according as his occasions will require: the largest and strongest for Car-Horses and great Draughts, the middle size for recreation, and for general use, the smaller sort for Women or for Summer journeys.

I have already spoken of some beauties and deformities which belong to Horses in general, but particularly take account of these few more, that you may know how to make a good bargain and not to be cheated in Horse-flesh.

In the first place, when any Horse is offered you to sell; if you can, first inquire of what breed he came,

came, and what his pace is, and having observed his colour, take a strict view of his countenance; if he looks chearfully and lively, you may conjecture he doth not want mettle: in the like nature it is a sign of vivacity and courage as well as a mark of beauty, to have his ears pricked, small, thin, sharp, and always in motion; but when they hang flapping and motionless, it is the infallible symptom of heaviness and bad nature.

A swelling forehead, a white star, a white rach neither too big nor too little, with a white snip on the nose, are tokens of comeliness & goodness; but if the rach stand awry, the forehead flat, and the nose be raw instead of a white snip, no greater marks of deformity. In like nature little eyes (Pig ey'd as they call it) are uncomely signs, and discover weakness; whereas on the contrary, black, bright, round, large eyes, starting as it were out of his head are the signs of a good natured mettlesome Horse: red and fiery eyes are little better than Moon-eyes, and not far from blindness. Wall-eyes are ever bad, weak sighted, and do declare a base nature; if with white specks, they are next door to the pearl, pin or web; if watry and bloody, the Horse hath sustained bruises; and if they matter, they are signs of old over-riding; and lastly, if the eyes be black, yet still not the pit so, but that, in every motion the white glearily appears, you may conclude that Horse weak and of an untractable disposition.

If the Thropple or Wind-pipe be large, and the Jaws very open, they are signs of soundness

of head, and that he hath great wind, with courage; if the Thropple be small, and kernels thereabout, you may then judge the contrary, and that the Horse is inclined to the Glanders, or is seized with a very foul cold. Now as to the teeth, be careful of buying an Horse that wanteth any, for it is the opinion of the expert, he were as good want all, as lose one.

See that his breast be broad, and out swelling, which shews he hath great strength, and will hold out a long time; the little breast shews weakness, and is the sign of uncomeliness; the narrow breasted Horse is most commonly a stumbler, and the inwardly hidden breast will not indure hard labour.

Let his fore thighs be Rush-brown, well sinewed and horny; but have a care they be not swel'd, otherwise they are certain signs of strength, the contrary are signs of weakness.

His legs must be clean, and the bought of the knee without a seam or hair broken; if you find scabs under his knee on the inside, it is the swift-cut, and very unfit to Gallop; and if his legs be round, fat, and fleshy, the Horse is altogether unserviceable and unfit to take pains.

So that one pastern be clean and well knit, and the other short, strong, and upright standing; for if the first be swel'd, you have cause to suspect sinew strains, and gurdung; if the other be long and bending, that Horse is most subject to tire.

Good Hooves ought to be black, not quite round, but smooth, yet tough: a white hoof is naught, being tender, not carrying a shoe well;

Of the several Complexions, &c. 19

well; an hoof that is rough and gross seemed, denotes old age, or that the Horse hath been over-heated; a brittle hoof will not carry a shoe; a very round hoof is bad for deep, dirty ways; a flat hoof shews foundering. The Crown of the hoof is sound, if the hair be smooth and close, and the flesh even; but if the flesh rise, the skin mangy, and the hair staring, you may then expect a Ring bone, a Crown scab, or something every whit as bad.

Look now to the Chine of his back, and see that it be broad, even, and straight, his ribs large, and bending outward, his buttock round and plump, his stones close truss'd up to his body, his Gaskoynes well let down to the middle joynt very full & thick, his hinder legs lean and sinewy; if they be swel'd the grease is molten into them, if scabbed above the pasterns, he hath the scratches, if chaps under his pasterns, he hath the pains, and these are both noisome and dangerous.

To conclude, his tail must stand broad, high, flat, and somewhat tauch'd inward, but a good buttock will produce a good tail, and a bad one can never have a tail to sit well thereon.

CHAP. IV.

Of the several Complexions of Horses.

Take this as a certain rule, *an Horses Complexion is ever judged by the Colour.* Now as in men, so in Horses; *what* element is predominant

nant and prevalent in him, from thence is drawn the complexion; so that if he participate more of the water than of fire, then he is to be looked on as a phlegmatick Horse. If on the other side, he partake of Fire more than any other Element, he is to be adjudged Choleric; the colour that denotes a Choleric Horse is either a Bright-Sorrel, a Coal-Black, or an Iron-Gray unchangeable: These are light, hot, and fiery, but at the best but weak and feeble: the diseases they are most incident to, are Inflammations of the Liver, Pestilential Feavers, and the Yellows: to prevent which distempers, Choler in them ought to be purg'd, but gently, because at their best strength they are weak of constitution; so that without having this consideration, by the imprudent administration of too strong a potion, instead of curing, an Horse may be confounded.

An Horse of a sanguine complexion is known by having Air abounding in him, and the Colour that attends this complexion is either a Bright-Bay, or a Dark-Bay, having no white flank, White-Flea-bitten, Black with a white star or white foot. The nature of these Horses is to be pleasant, of great strength, nimble and free: the diseases concomitant are Consumption of the Liver, Glanders, Leprosie, with other infectious Distempers. As their natures are strong, so they will indure the application of strong medicaments, especially such as cool the blood, which are most suitable to his nature and disposition.

As I said before, if Water be more redundant

in any Horse than any other Element, then is he said to be **P**legmatick, and the colour thereunto belonging is either Pide-Ball, Milk-White, Kite-glew'd, or Yellow-Dun; these beasts are much inclin'd to sloth, and are very washy; the diseases which accompany this Complexion are Rheumes, Staggers, Colds, and Head-Ache, &c. By reason of the great quantity of Flegm which doth intest their bodies, strong medicines will not hurt them, having so much matter to work upon.

The fourth complexion is called Melancholy, and that hath more of Earth in it than Fire, Air, or Water; his proper colour is a Mouse-Dun, Ash-Gray, Dark-Bay with Mayly mouth, Red or White Flank, a Reddish-Bay, Russet and Chestnut. They are naturally dull and cowardly; they are afflicted with the Dropsie, Frenzy, and Spleen, and such like: all dry or cicatrizing Medicaments are injurious to their natures, but cold and moist are beneficial.

There is a fifth Complexion held by Farriers, being as they say, an equal composition or commixture of the four Elements; and this constitution they highly applaud, in that one Element is not more predominant than another, being so equally temper'd that there is no overflowing in either: and this Temperament participates of all colours, as Brown, Bay, Dabled, or not Dabled, the Black full of silver Hair, Dable-Gray, or a fair Roan, Red or Black; these they affirm are most healthful, gentle, strong, and temperate, and inclinable to no disease: all this any man would believe, if there were any

Instructions for the

such constitution to be found, for I think it impossible that the four Elements should be so evenly and equally temper'd in any body, but that one must be more powerful than the rest; and so consequently the Horses Constitution must incline to that Element which most aboundeth in him. But of the temperaments of an Horse, I shall speak more particularly, when I shall come to give you an account of the frame or composition of an Horse, dissecting every part as a necessary introduction to the knowledge and cure of those diseases which infest every particular member.

But before I shall enter upon that subject, which is the main scope of my intention; Give me leave to lay you down some new Experiments, which may tend much to the benefit of him that is desirous to be perfect in the Art of Riding and Feeding Race Horses.

CHAP. V.

Instructions for the accomplishing a Rider.

TO encourage you in the noble Art of Riding, I have in brief discovered to you what a pleasant and profitable Creature an Horse is to mankind; and that you might at no time want a good one, I have indeavoured to instruct you how you should so breed them, that you should not fail in your expectations; or if you did, then how to buy a good one both by marks, shape, and

and Colour; and having obtained your desire, let us now consider the office and duty of a Rider.

Some there are so opinionative, that being able to sit a rough unriden Colt a few plunges by holding Monkey like, with both hands to the Mane and Pummel, clinging with both legs to the side of the Horse, as if they would clip him in two, which puts the poor beast into so great a disorder, that by his violent flinging and flouncing, he agitates the poor Beast clear out of wind; having made him thus breathless, nothing will serve his turn, but the appellation of a compleat Horse-man.

In the first place let me perswade you, not only to lay aside vain glory, but cholerick impatience; for no man, let him love the Art never so well, can make a compleat Horse-man if he be rash and hasty; neither will an Horse learn his precepts if he be not otherwise inclined; and therefore if he prove bad, his faults and defects must not be imputed so much to his ill nature, as his indiscreet Rider.

Wherefore avoid severity to your young Horse, for it is a Maxime laid down by that compleat Horse-man, Thomas de Grey Esq; *He cannot be a good Horse-man who wanteth knowledge how to bring his Horse to perfection by fair, sweet, and gentle means, rather than by correction and severe chastisement*: however the whip must not always be neglected if he doth amiss; if well, let him be cherished, by stroaking and otherways to encourage him in well-doing; for an Horse is a creature of great understanding.

Let your Groom frequently toy and play with him, be continually talking to him in some odd phrase or other, for this pleaseth a good natur'd Horse: let him morning and evening ride him a little way abroad, but he must have a care he do not heat him too much: he must duly curry, curb, and dress him, wipe, pick, and cleanse him, feed and cherish him, keeping him sweet and warm, be often imployed about him, tampering with his legs and heels, frequently taking up his feet, rapping him gently on the soles, and softly knocking him on the Coffins; by this means he will be brought to lift up his foot at first bidding.

Before you put your Horse to grass (if you have rid him a journey) take some small quantity of blood from him three or four days before you turn him out: but I would not advise you to put him forth till about the tenth of *May*. If your horse hath been pampered in a warm stable, I would have you use him to some hardness before you put him to grass, for otherwise he may be subject to take cold; and when you take him up from grass, let it be about the latter end of *August*, for then the season will be troubled with cold dews, and the heart of grass beginneth then to fail; but in the taking of him up have a care of heating of him, because that fat he got at grass is not firm, but somewhat tender; two days after you have him in the stable, then blood-let him again, which will prevent a great many diseases which are occasioned by the Gaul and Spleen.

Make frequent inspection into your Horses mouth,

mouth, for fear of Barbes, Cankers, Bigs, Blisters, and these you may discover by the spots of the Gums, Tongue, and Mouth, and accordingly make speedy applications for their cure. And to this end both wash and rub his mouth with Verjuice and Bay-Salt mingled together, and all the better if you let some pass down his throat. If your Horses eyes look dull and drowsy more than usual, you may justly suppose him to be ill; and to prevent the growth of his distemper, give him the drink of a Diateseron.

If you find your Horse halt, or favour one foot more than the other, let his foot be immediately examined, let him take off the shooe, and search for Gravel or a Nail; if you find none, yet perceive the foot warmer than the rest, then search the heel and frush; if all well there, then higher to the pastern joynt in the leg, or back sinew: having found the fault, let the Farrier be instantly acquainted with his malady.

When you are to take your journey with him, let him be water'd in the house, giving him an indifferent quantity of good clean Oats, then tying him up to the rack, curry, dress, and saddle him, leaving his girths loose, and do not draw them strait till you are going to mount him; then ride him softly for the first three miles, that you may prevent crudities, and that he may digest his meat the better: three miles before you come to your journeys end, ride him into some River (if any near you) up to his belly, but not deeper, and so let him drink, not all at once, but

26 *Choice observations for feeding*

but by degrees; then ride him an indifferent pace, to warm his water in his belly, which will so refresh him, that forgetting his weariness, he will fall to his meat with the greater appetite. Having brought him to the stable, tie him up to the empty rack, and litter him up to the belly, and be sure that after you have caused him to be well rubbed, both belly, legs, back, neck, face, and head, also the breast; then upon a cloth let his saddle be clapt on, and so let him stand almost an hour.

As for those Lessons you intend to teach your Horse which are fit for his practice, and the purpose for which you intend him; as if it be for Hunting, Running, Travail, Hackney, or the like; then the chiefest things you are to apply yourself to, are to preserve a good mouth, to trot freely and comely, to amble surely and easily, to gallop strongly and swiftly, to obey the hand in stopping gently, and retiring willingly, and to turn on either hand, readily and nimbly; to all which, I must refer you to the works of that ingenious and most accomplished Gentleman, Mr. *Markham*.

CHAP. VI.

Choice observations for the feeding of Horses for the Race.

AS for the time of keeping the Race Horse, it is not certainly concluded upon by the Masters of this Art, for some would have it an half
year

year at least, though they have no other ground for it, but that if he should run sooner he may indanger the melting of his grease by that violent and too early exercise; that thereby ill humours will be too hastily stirred, and so consequently bring upon them innumerable diseases; and hereupon they conclude that to bring him to it gradually with length of time is most expedient, not considering the great charge the owner must infallibly be at, and it may be it will eat up the profit of the price.

Besides, they discover much ignorance herein by not considering that if grease should be melted (which of all hands is confest very dangerous) it may be purged away by wholesome scourings: humours too suddainly stir'd, and so dispersing themselves to the great detriment of the body, may be evacuated by sweat and moderate Airings.

But if half a year be too long, pray what time then is most convenient, you will say? For this purpose of preparation it is the opinion of the most expert judicious Feeders, that seven or eight weeks is time long enough for an old trained Horse.

And lest any ill humour should lurk within the body of an Horse, and so detriment the intended purpose of his swift and free running; I would advise you to elect such nourishing simples, (and not a mish mash of I know not what poisonous ingredients) which may bring away any melted grease or ill humour which offends the body, without delaying time; and by this course you may better and much more forward
your

28 Choice observations for feeding, &c.

intents in four days than others in four months ; for by their deferring time (as Mr. *Markham* observes) they nor no man else can certainly tell which way the melted grease, and other foul humours will avoid ; whether into his Ordure, and that's the safest ; whether into sweat, which is hazardous ; into his limbs, which is mischievous ; or remain, and putrefie in his body, which is mortally dangerous.

But when I advise you to scour, my intent and meaning is, that you should not run into the extreams of some foolish persons ; who are never at rest but when they are giving their Horses some slop or other, which they call a potion, or scourings, most commonly without cause, and always without order ; thereby so debilitating the poor Creature, that though he may be willing, yet is rendered incapable of running that course which must be performed with so much strength, vigour, agility, and swiftness.

From over doing or under doing, the Feeder ought to make choice of a mediocrity : if he intends to purge, let him be sure he have a just occasion for so doing ; and that is, when he is certain that foul humours abound ; and let the means by which he intends to evacuate them be wholesome simples, being confident in what he prescribes that it will rather add to the Horses vigour, than diminish from it ; so with deserved applause he shall succeed in his enterprise.

If your Horse be over fat, or foul, or newly taken from grass, my advice is, that you diet him

him two months at least before you let him run the Race-match; if the wager will permit, take a longer time. If he be very poor by over riding or some other disorder, take what time you can above five weeks; but six will serve, exercising him well with his feeding. But if your Horse be in a mediocrity and good temperament of body, a month is time enough to fit and adapt him for his race.

CHAP. VII.

Rules for the first and right ordering of the Race-Horse.

AS I said before, when you have match'd your Horse, you are to consider the condition, and principally regard the estate of body, in which the Horse is, at the time of his matching; which is fat and foul, poor and lean, or in a golden mean.

If fat and foul, for the first fortnight rise betimes; and having tied his bridle to the rack, after it is put on him, wash't in beer; cleanse your stable well; and then fall to dressing your Horse, which you may do in this manner.

First curry him well all over; then dust him with an Horses tayl, or some clean dusting cloth; then with your wet hand stroke all his body over, not leaving any loose hair to stick upon him: having thus done, wipe him dry again,

gain, and be sure to cleanse his sheath, stones, and tuel, his ears, eyes, and nostrils. Then must you make a large body-cloth of thick warm Kersey if it be in the Winter; but some lighter stuff, as fine Cotten, for the Summer; and fold or wrap it about the Horses body; then girt him with his saddle on, the foremost girt pretty strait, but the other more remiss or slack: Then put on his breast cloth, covering both breast and shoulders; and let his standing be continually on good store of fresh litter night and day, of wheat straw, as near as you can. Having thus accoutred him, draw him out of the stable, and back him, and walk him a foot pace (which is called raking) a mile or two, but neither amble nor trot him, for that will prejudice his celerity or speed. If you can find any steep hills, gallop him up gently, but rack or walk him down softly, that he may cool as much the one way as he hath heated himself the other; having thus exercised him a pretty space, walk your Horse to some River or clear Pond, fed by some wholesome Spring, and there let him drink what he pleaseth. After this, gallop him moderately, to warm the water in his belly; then rack him a pretty space, and then show him the water again; if he drink, gallop him again; and thus exercise him still, both before and after he hath drank his water.

When you have caused him to drink what is enough, and exercised him sufficiently; Then bring him home gently, so that he have not a wet hair. Being entred the stable, provoke him to piss by whistling; which you will incline him

ordering of the Race-horse. 31

to, by often so doing; and this you will find shall add much to the Horses health.

This being done, tye up his head to the rack, with his bridle on; then with hard wisps with all your might rub down his forelegs; and unloosing his breast-cloth, with a dry course Cloth rub well his head, neck, and breast; and having taken off his Saddle and Body-cloth, rub his back, and every other part of him: then cloath him up in Linnen, and over that a good strong housing cloth, and over that his Woollen body-Cloth; then girting his cloaths about him, stop his Surcingle round with big, thick, and soft wisps, and so shall he lye more at ease.

Having thus cloathed your Horse, pick his feet, and stop them up with Cow-dung; throwing into his rack a small bundle of Hay, which he shall tear out as he standeth on his bridle.

Having stood about an hour on his bridle, rub then again his head all over, and the nape of his neck with a clear rubber made of hempen cloth; then draw his bridle, and cleanse very well the Manger, and put therein a quart or somewhat more of dry, old, and well cleansed Oats: the best are the heaviest and whitest, such as are called *Poland*, or the cut oats: Oats which are moist swell the body; worms are bred by new Oats: the black Oats, which though they are tolerably good, yet cause full dung, which hinders a mans discerning the state of his Horses body. If your Horse with a good stomach shall eat this quart of Oats, you may give him another, well sifted, and so let him alone till eleven of the clock.

clock. Then come to him again and give him another quart, well tossed and ree'd; then close up your lights, and keep him as dark as you can till one of the Clock. This keeping of him in the dark, will occasion him to lye down, and take his rest, whereas in the light he would not.

At one of the Clock come again, and rub his head, face, and neck, and give him another quart of Oats, ordered as aforesaid; and having taken his Dung from him, leave him till three in the Winter, and four in the Summer.

At that time conie again, and having wet the bridle in beer, put it on his head, and tye him up to the rack; then uncloath him, and dress him, as before expressed. After dressing, cloath and saddle him, as you did in the morning; and leading him forth, provoke him to piss and dung; then mount him, and ride him as you did before, but not to the hills, rather chusing some even and plain ground, at least-wise make choice of that which is most level. Having chosen your ground, ride him as before, galloping him both before and after his watering, and then raking him gently up and down, and so return home with him; and whatsoever you did after his mornings airing, do the like after his evenings airing.

About nine of the Clock give him your last visit for that night, and first rub down his legs well with hard wisps, then with a cleare Cloth rub his head, face, and chaps, with the nape of his neck, and fore parts, and so gradually his whole body; then give him a quart of Oats well sifted,

sifted, in a thoroughly cleansed Manger; putting a small bundle of Hay in his tack, and tossing up his litter, that he may lye soft, leave him to his rest.

The next morning before Sun-rising, and so every morning for a fortnight, do as you have done this first morning; omitting nothing that was done the whole day. If this you observe to do, you shall so harden his flesh, and dissipate, or consume his foulness; that the next fortnight you may adventure to heat him, so it be gently, and with moderation.

And herein you are to consider, that two heats in a week is sufficient for any Horse whatsoever. Where note, that if your match is to be run on a Thursday, the fittest heating days are Thursdays and Tuesdays; ever let the one be on the same day, and the other two days before; but let the former be the sharper heat: and let not your heats be in rainy and foul weather; for it is unwholsome; and therefore rather defer your day.

Lastly, let not your heats be late in the Evening, for it is unpleasant to the Horse, and of a dangerous consequence: but let it be early in the morning, about Sun-rising. So much for the first fortnights observation: let us now consider what must be done for the second.

CHAP. VIII.

Observations for the second fortnights keeping.

THERE is not more to be done as to cleansing the stable, cloathing, dressing, saddling, airing, watering, than was in the first fortnight; but now we must alter his diet, and with his Oats give him bread: and by the way, let me show you how to make it.

Take one part of Wheat, and three of Beans, and mixing them together, grind them to pure meal; then searce and bolt it through an indifferent fine range; and knead it up with good store of barm, or Yest, but with very little water; be sure you labour it well in the trough, and then cover it warm, and let it lye some while to swell; then knead it over again, and make it up into good big loaves, and so let them soak well in the Oven, and see that they be well baked. Do not give your Horse any of this bread whilst it is new, for it is very apt to surfeit; wherefore use it not till it be three or four days old: before you use a loaf chip it well; and then cutting several pieces thereof, to the quantity of the Oats you intend to give him, mingle the bread therewith.

Between eleven and twelve give him of this bread and oats, the same quantity you gave him in the morning, and then do not visit him till one of the Clock; at which time you shall feed him

him as in the forenoon, if you intend not to heat him the day following; if you intend to heat him, then give him neither bread nor hay, but only a quart of sweet Oats; dressing, cloathing, saddling, airing, and watering him as before shewed: and let him have his constant meals of this bread and oats *de die in diem*, with the usual Ceremonies as aforesaid; and now and then in a morning break a new laid raw egge into his mouth, washing it after with a little strong Ale.

Now make him acquainted with the starting Posts; rake up your Horse gently to the first post, and let him smell to it; then rake him to the last, and there let him do the like, that he may take notice of the beginning and ending of his Course. Now start your Horse roundly and sharply at three quarters speed; and according to his strength, wind and alacrity, run him the whole course through, but by no means do not strain him; and when you find him a little yield, then ease him a little; so that what he doth may be done freely, and with pleasure: this will make him take delight in his pains taking; and so enable him the better to perform what is to be expected from him.

Having thus coursed your Horse, gallop him moderately, to recover his wind, and chear his spirits; and then rake him home to his stall; where having scraped off his sweat, and rub'd him well all over, give him this scouring which you had before already prepared.

An excellent Scouring.

Take a pint of very rich Sack (that which is commonly called sweet) and put thereunto above an Ounce of your clearest and purest Rosen, bruised to a very fine dust; and brew them well together: when the Sack and the Rosen are incorporated, add thereunto a pint of the best Sallet-Oyl: lastly take an Ounce and half of brown Sugar-Candy beaten to powder; and having brewed these together, mull them over the fire; and being luke-warm, draw your Horses head up to the rack immediately after his coming from his heat, and with an horn give him this scouring. This is an excellent strong scouring, which purgeth away all manner of melted grease and foulness whatsoever.

 CHAP. IX.
What is to be observed after the administration of this scouring.

PResently after your Horse hath taken this scouring, let his legs be instantly rubb'd, and run his body slightly over with a Curry-comb, and afterwards with the brush; then rub it over again with dry cloaths, and let great pains be taken with his head, nape of his neck, and about his heart; then let him be cloathed
 very

very warm, and wisp him round with large wisps; and you may do well to throw a blanket over him, if the weather be chilly and cold.

Let your Horse fast two hours after he hath taken his scouring; and let some or other stand by your Horse the while, continually forcing him into action, for this motion maketh the medicine work; and those humours which otherwise with rest would lye undisturbed, are now stirred and raised for the Physick to work upon, and remove.

After the expiration of two hours, handle his body, the roots of his ears, fillets, flanks, and thighs; if you find any new cold sweat, or that he breaths fast and quick, then conclude that the Medicine is still struggling with some bad humour for the upper hand, and therefore give him nothing; otherwise you may give him an handful of wheat ears, not rough bearded; but if you find him thus disorder'd, leave him in darkness two hours more, that he may take his rest.

If you find after this time none of those Symptoms, you may then give him a little bundle of Hay, and an hour after that a quart of sweet Oats well sifted, and mingled with two or three handfuls of spelted Beans, cleansed from all impurity; and to these add two or three thick shives of bread well chipt; and so leave him to his rest for three hours, or thereabout.

At the Evening before dressing, give him the like quantity; but ride him not out, nor give him any water; but instead thereof, take three

pints of well sifted Oats, and wash them well in Ale, and so give them him; for this will inwardly refresh and cool him.

The morrow following very early dress, feed, and cloath your Horse; then saddle, and air him abroad, watering him in the same manner as formerly exprest: having brought him to the stable, give him Oats, spelted Beans, and Bread, but very little Hay; and keep your heating days if foul weather prevent not, and omit none of the aforesaid preparations.

Thus you shall spend the second fortnight: having in that time been well heated and well scoured, there is no question but that his body is sufficiently cleansed from filth and evil humours. You may now order him the third Fortnight after this manner.

A finer sort of bread made after this manner.

Take three pecks of clean Beans, and two pecks of fine Wheat; grind them well, and scarce them through a fine range, and knead it well with Barm, and soaking it in good big loaves in the Oven, let it be well baked.

Let it be somewhat stale before you use it, cutting off the crust, and mingling the shives with clean sifted Oats, and spelted Beans; and so feed him therewith, observing the same hours therefore, with the times of dressing and airing as in the former fortnight; so likewise to his heating days, only with this difference, his heats must
not

ordering of the Race Horse. 39

not be so violent as before ; neither must you use your scourings ; but instead thereof, immediately after the heat, give him a Ball about the bigness of a Pullets egge, which is called the *Cordial Ball*.

The manner of making that excellent Cordial Ball which avoideth all molten grease, recovers a lost appetite, cures any violent Cold, and the Glanders, fattens an Horse speedily, and preserves an Horse from fainting with exercises.

Take the seeds of Cummin, Fenugreek, Carthamom, Elicampane roots, and Colts-foot, of each two ounces, beaten, and scarced to a fine dust ; two ounces of the flower of Brimstone, then take an ounce of the juice of Licoras, and dissolve it on the fire in half a pint of White-wine ; which done, take an ounce of Chymical Oyl of Anniseeds, then of Sallet Oyl, Hony, and the Syrrup of Sugar, or of Molosses, of each half a pint : then mix all these with the former powders, and with as much fine Wheat flower, as will bind and knit them all together ; work them into stiff paste ; and make thereof Balls as big as Pullets egges, when you use them ; and so put the Paste in a close Gallipot, and you may keep it a whole year.

If you will use these Balls as an Antidode, or prevention of sickness ; then anoint them with sweet butter, and in a morning give them as a

Pill, three or four mornings together, exercising him a little after their reception.

If for a Cold or the Glaunders, let them be taken every morning for a week together; if to fatten an Horse, use them a fortnight. But if to remove molten grease and foulness, then let them be taken presently after, or in the heat

This Ball dissolved in a pint of Sack, and given an Horse which hath taken cold, which you may know by the rattling in his throat, is a present and infallible cure.

If taken before travel, it prevents all tiring; if in the height of travel, it refresheth, and banisheth weariness; and if you give it after travel, it prevents all surfeits and inward sickness.

CHAP. X.

What is to be done in the fourth and last Fortnights keeping.

IN the first place, you are to take notice, that as his Oats and Beans must be well sifted and cleansed, so must his bread be finer than what was made before; and thus you must make it,

The fourth and last Bread.

Take one peck of clean Beans, and three of Wheat; grind them on black stones, and let them

ordering of the Race-Horse. 41

them be bolted through the finest Bolter you can procure; then knead it up well with Ale Yest, with some strong Ale, and also the whites of above twenty Egges; instead of water, some new Milk; and having wrought it laboriously, let it be well baked; and cutting off the crust, mingle it with your Oats and Beans as aforesaid; and feed your Horse at his ordinary feeding times, as you did before.

You must observe his heating days, the first week in this Fortnight, as you did formerly: the last week you must not give him any heat, till five days before the match, only give him good airings.

Whatever washt meat you give your Horse this Fortnight, let it not be washt as formerly, in Ale; but in the whites of Egges, or Muscadine; this will make him long winded: give him but little Hay, but what he taketh out of your hand.

The last day, you must cool and shooe your Horse; and whatever Ornament was intended, let it be now done, that the Horse may take notice thereof, and so be encouraged, and not incumber'd that day he is to run.

The morning before he is to run, get up before day, and rub his head well, giving him Oats washt in Muscadine; but if he refuse that, or the whites of Egges, then mingle among your Oats a little wheat, or your late made finest bread; and provoke him by all means imaginable, to empty before he runs.

Having warning to make ready, wash his Snaffle in Muscadine; then bridle him up, and dress

dress him; and as you are about to lead him out, put an half pint of Muscadine in an horn, and give it him. When you come to the place of starting; rub and chafe his legs with hard wisps, then pick his feet, and wash his mouth with water; let the Rider then mount, and starting fair, let him refer the success to Providence.

The next thing we should insist upon, should be the knowledge of all diseases or maladies belonging to an Horse, whether external or internal, and their cures and remedies: but because they can never be certainly known, without knowing the composition and several parts of an Horse, I shall begin with the Anatomy of an Horse, as the best introduction to the Physical and Chirurgical cures of his distempers, and first

CHAP. XI.

Of the Symmetrie, or Proportion of Members in an Horse that is well shaped.

IT is the opinion of the best Farriers, or Horse-leeches, that there are in an Horses mouth twelve steps one above another, like a pair of stairs: his tongue is generally reckoned half a foot in length, his upper lip six inches, and his weather five; his jaws each of them ten inches, his head from his eyes downward full twelve inches long, his ears five inches in length, and his eyes four inches in circumference, his neck
from

from the nape unto the withers seven handfuls, from the Withers to the Fillets twelve handfuls, and from the Fillets to the setting on the Tail six handfuls; the length of the shoulders twelve inches, the length of the Shank six inches, the length of the hinder Hough twelve inches, and the Cambrel five inches, and the length of the whole body from Head to Tail should be an hundred inches.

It is not to be supposed that the parts of all Horses are of this dimension; for as the stature of the Horse is, so are his Members, greater or less: but these aforesaid observations are uncertain; wherefore I am more inclined to believe the experience of Mr. Gervase Markham in this matter; who saith, *Look what quantity is between the Nape of the Horses Neck and the uttermost part of the Withers, three must ever be twice as much between the Withers and the setting on the Tail; and what quantity is between the Shoulder blade, I mean the top thereof, or the top of the Withers to the Elbow of the Horse, it must be twice as much from the Elbow to the setting on of the hoof; and look how much it is from the top of the Hip to the stifling place, it must be twice so much from the stifling place to the setting on the hinder hoof: this is the certaineft rule for an Horses trueft proportion: and from experience I am apt to believe no less.*

CHAP. XII.

What and how many are the Veins properly belonging to an Horse.

THe knowledge of the veins in an Horse is a study so needful, that he cannot be a skilful Farrier that is ignorant herein : wherefore according to my best ability, I shall endeavour to give you an account hereof.

From the Liver the fountain of all blood, proceedeth one large Vein, from whence cometh these lesser rivulets.

First, within the palate of his mouth, above the first and third bars, are two considerable veins, and are frequently struck for diseases in the head or stomach : there are two which descend from his eyes to his nostrils, and are opened for maladies in the eyes. He hath also two very large veins on each side of the Wind-pipe, and are breathed upon any distemper whatsoever. He hath likewise two veins which ascend from between his fore legs, and rest upon the foremost bough of the fore leg, which are called the *Plat-Veins* ; and these are struck for foundring, or other distempers in the limbs.

There are two other Veins, which run down from the Elbow of the fore shoulder, along the insides of the fore legs, and are called the *Shank-Veins*, which are opened for *Splents* and *Mallanders*. Again there are four veins which run along the Fetlocks, and are called the *Shackle-Veins*

Veins; they are small, and are often opened for stiffness in the joints, or for tying.

He hath four veins also, about the *Cronets* in his Hoofs, called *Cronet-Veins*, and are opened for *Ring-Bones*. There are four Veins in his four hoofs, called *Toe-Veins*, opened for fretting in the feet, and for foundring. From his stones two great Veins descend along the inside of his Thighs, to his *Cambrel*, and are called *Kidney-Veins*, and are opened for diseases in those parts. From above the hinder *Cambrel* descend two Veins along the inside of the hinder legs down to the Fetlocks, and are called the *Spaven-Veins*, and are opened for the *blood Spaven* only. There are two *Flank-Veins*, and are opened for any malady in the *Reins* and *Fillets*; and two hinder *Hanch Veins*, opened for Consumption of the flesh. Lastly, he hath one single Vein in the Tail, and is properly called the *Tayl-Vein*, which is commonly opened for shedding of hair, or for the *Mange*.

There are a great many more veins which have their derivation from these, but they are so small they are of no efficacy, and were any of them cut, it would tend to no prejudice; but as to these aforementioned, if cut, great danger may insue.

CHAP. XIII.

Of an Horses Sinews.

THe Brain is acknowledged by all, to be the Fountain, from whence Sinews have their rise; particularly, there is derived thence one great Tendon, which passeth through the cavity of Neck and Back-bone, extending it self to the nethermost joint of the Strunt. Two small branches proceed from this main Tendon, which passing through certain holes in the Horses skull, run down along his cheeks, even to the summity of his Nostrils. Besides these there are two more which pass through holes in his neather chap, knitting that and the upper together; and running down by his great teeth, meet below his neather lip. Moreover, there are twenty eight small threads, which running through so many holes in the seven bones of his neck, knit them fast together; and those which knit his Chine to the end of his Strunt are infinite.

To speak of every particular sinew would take up too much time; wherefore, in a word, from the setting on the Horses Neck, unto the flat Columel, or Huckle-bone doth extend one great broad sinew, of three inches in breadth, being of one single substance, no other sinew having any derivation from it; which not only holdeth the Shoulder-Blades together; but covereth all the Chine over; and this is commonly called *Pax-wax*. Of all the principal Sinews appertaining

ning to an Horſe (from whence an infinite number of ſmall ones are derived) there is in number thirty eight, according to the opinion of ſuch who have made frequent inſpection into the Carcaſe of an Horſe.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the Bones in an Horſes body.

AS in an Horſe ſo in an Oxe, there are juſt one hundred and ſeventy bones, which are number'd thus: in the upper part of the head, two bones, from the forehead to the noſe two, his neather Jaws two, twelve fore Teeth, four Tuſhes, twenty four Grinders, ſeven bones from the Nape of the Neck to the points of the Spade-bones, eight from thence to the Huckle-bones, and thence to the Tail ſeven.

The great broad hinder bone hath twelve joints in it, then are there two Spade-bones, and from the Forcels two Marrow-bones, two Thigh-bones, two Shank-bones, and from thence downward into the Hoofs there are ſixteen ſmall bones.

In the Breſt of the Horſe there is a great bone, whereunto are faſtned thirty ſix Ribbs; there are many more bones, in all two hundred fifty ſeven; of which you may come to the knowledge (if you are ſo deſirous) by your own ſtrict indagation, and curious inſpection or inquiry.

Before I enter on the cures of the ſeveral Diſtempers.

48 How to know the Age of an Horse.

stempers that attend an Horse ; which are more than belong to any other Beast, especially the running Horse, by reason of his violent exercise ; give me leave to inform you, how you may know the age of any Horse.

CHAP. XV.

The most experienced, and most approved way to judge an Horses Age, by his Teeth, Hoofs, Tayl, Eyes, Skin, Hair, and the Bars, or Stairs in his mouth.

AS I told you before, in the Chapter of an Horses bones ; an Horse hath twelve fore Teeth, six above and six beneath, twenty four Grinders, and four Tusshes, which make in all forty Teeth.

His Foal Teeth, for the first year, are only Grinders, without Tusshes ; which are white, small, and bright ; the second year, the four foremost Teeth change colour, and appear more big and brown.

The third year, the next Teeth unto these do change also, and no Foal Teeth are visible before, but two on each side above, and as many below, being both bright and small. The fourth year he hath left but two Foal-Teeth, one on each side, above and below. The fifth year, his foremost Teeth will all change ; and then his Tusshes will appear compleat ; and those which
appear

How to know the Age of an Horse. 49

appear in the place of the last Foal-teeth cast, will be hollow, and have a little black speck in the middest; and this is the mark so much talked on, which continueth till after eight years old. The sixth year beareth little difference to the fifth: but in the seventh year his Teeth are at their perfect growth; and the mark in the Horses mouth will then be plainest seen. In the eighth year, the mark will in a manner disappear, and vanish. At the ninth year his foremost teeth will seem longer, yellower, and fowler than before; and his Tushes very bluntish. After this year you shall never certainly discern what age an Horse is by his Teeth; wherefore you must apply your self to other helps: as first, observe whether the Horses Hoofs be rugged and seamed, full, dry, and rusty, he is then for certain stricken in age; whereas if his hoofs are smooth, moist and hollow, he is undoubtedly young.

Secondly, with your finger and your thumb take your Horse by the stern of the Tayl, close at the setting on by his Burtock; and if you find a joint sticking out more than any other joint, about the bigness of an Hasel-nut, then you may adjudge him about ten; but if it be smooth in that place, and no such thing be felt, he may be eighteen years old for ought you know.

Thirdly, mark if his eyes be round, full, and staring from his head, and the pits filled, even with the Temple, it is a sign he is young; if wrinkled under his eyes, or about his brow, he is then old.

Fourthly, pull with your fore-finger and thumb his skin up, if it return to its place smooth he is young; if otherwise, old. E Fifthly,

50 Of Diseases in Horses,

Fifthly, if the eye brows or main of a dark coloured Horse shall grow grissel, he is very old.

Lastly, if the bars in his mouth feel rough and hard, and are great and deep, then conclude him very old; but if otherwise, soft and tender, there is no fear, but that he is young and lusty.

And now we shall descend to the cure of diseases, which are twofold, internal and external; we shall begin with the last, and end with the first.

CHAP. XVI.

Of Diseases in Horses, and their causes.

IT is not to be expected, that any man should become a Farrier, who shall not know, First, to what disease an Horse is most inclinable. Secondly, what are the causes of every disease in particular. Thirdly, how and by what means those diseases do accrew. Fourthly, the signs and symptoms how to know and distinguish them; and Lastly, the means and manner how to cure them.

I shall insist on every one of these in its due order. Now first, touching the diseases an Horse is most inclinable to; & they are suitable to the complexion or constitution of the Horse: for example, if the Horse be coloured Mouse-Dun, Chestnut Brown, Soot colour, or Iron-Gray, his complexion then is melancholy, participating
more

more of earth than any other Element; by which means he becomes dull, heavy, dogged, restive, faint-hearted, &c. and therefore most inclined to Inflammation in the Spleen, siccidity in the Liver, to the Dropsie, Frenzy, and the like; and so may you judge of other diseases by the other three Complexions already treated of in a foregoing Chapter.

Secondly, we must consider what are the causes of every disease in particular: where note, that the causes of sickness are all unnatural effects and evil dispositions. Of these causes, there are two sorts, external and internal: External are such which afflict the outward parts of the body, and the Internal the inward parts, proceeding from ill diet, evil humours, obstructions, &c.

Sickness it self is no more than an evil temperature, and that is two fold, either simple or compound: simple, when one quality is redundant, as too cold, too hot, too moist, too dry: compound, when more than one quality abound, as too cold and too moist. Some diseases are lingering, and consume the body by degrees; as Consumptions, Glanders; others short, and presently mortal as soon as discovered; as Yellows, Anticor, and Staggers: Now some diseases again do occupy the whole body; as Fevers, Pestilence, Convulsions, and so forth; others, only some parts; as Colds offend the head, Surfeits the stomach.

Thirdly, how and by what means do these accrew: the means are inbred or accidental; either coming from ill humours, and surfeits, or molten grease, and foulness by over exercise, and the like.

Fourthly, of the signs and symptoms of Diseases, which are many, nay, almost innumerable; however, take them thus in brief. First, observe the place of the member grieved; and see whether it have its true proportion, and is not less or more in quantity; if either happen, the Horse is diseased: next, mark the alteration of the quality; as, whether too moist, too dry, too cold, or too hot. Your third sign may be taken from the members non-performance of his duty; and lastly, by the thicker and thinner Excrements. But these directions may seem to some difficult and abstruse; wherefore take these plainer instructions, which are the thirty years observation of a most ingenious Gentleman, and one admired by all the Horse-Doctors in or about this City; and thus he layeth down the undeceivable signs of all sorts of internal diseases.

If an Horse be more than usual slower to labour, or duller to the spur.

If he be shorter winded, drawing his breath quick.

If his ears hang down more than they were wont.

If his hair do bristle, or be more staring:

If his Flanks be more than usually lank and hollow.

If he burn betwixt his ears, or about his pasterns.

If travelling, his stomach fail him, and his mouth dry which used to foam.

These are infallible signs of inward distemper, as to the general; now as to signs of particular diseases, take these.

If

If an Horse hold down his head, whereas he was wont to have a chearful look, it prognosticates a Feaver, Head-ach or Foundring.

That Horse whose eye were naturally clear and quick, and of a suddain look dull, and dim, and heavy, is troubled either with the head-ach, or the staggers is seizing him.

An Horse will frequently discover obstructions in the Liver, by often turning his head to the right side ; and the like by turning it down to his belly, make appear that he is troubled with the Bots, Worms, or Cholick.

Water running from an Horses mouth, is the sign of a wet cough, or staggers.

If foul matter issue from an Horses Nostrils, it signifies an Ulcer in the nose or head ; if it be white, it is a sign of the Glanders ; if black, of the mourning of the Chine ; if yellow, the consumption of the Liver ; if little lumps proceed from his mouth, it shows the rottenness of his Lungs.

The beating of the Flank with shortness of breath, is the sign of a Feaver or Strangle.

If ought may be felt on both sides the Forehead beating, it is a sign of the Staggers.

Swellings about the ears betoken the Pole-evil ; under the ear, the vives ; and swelling in the mouth, is the sign of the Canker, Flaps, or Lampas.

Swelling under the throat, and swelling about the root of the Tongue, is in the first, a sign of the Glanders, in the last, a sign of the Strangle ; but if about the tongue roots there be only knots or kernels, it is only a sign of a Cold.

54 Of Diseases in Horses, &c.

If an Horse tremble after drinking cold water, during that time he hath a certain fit of an Ague; for if any will observe it after the trembling is over, he shall find him burn and glow extremely.

If an Horse piss with much difficulty, you may suspect him either foundred, or troubled with the Wind-Cholick or Stones; if the colour of his urine be yellow, it is a sign of the Glanders; but if thick and black, he is afflicted with pain in the Kidneys.

If Horses Dung stink much it is the sign of a hot Liver, if little, then of a cold Liver, and if undigested, then of a Consumption, or some dry Malady.

If an Horse desire extremely to lie down on his right side, he is troubled with a hot Liver; if on the left, it is the sign of a distemper'd Spleen; if he tumble to and fro, taking no rest, then he is troubled with Worms, Bots, or Wind-cholick; if not able to rise when down, it betokens mortal weakness, or foundring in the body.

If an Horse covet much meat and little drink, it betokens a cold Liver; but if he thirst much, and eat little, then it denotes a Fever, rotten Lungs, an extraordinary heat in the stomach, or the dry Yellows.

If an Horse strike with his foot at his belly, it signifies the Cholick, or Gripping of the Guts; but if he fisks with his Tayl when he strikes, then it is Bots or Worms.

If a knotty Ulcer creep along the Veins, it is the Farcy; if expanding it self only in one place, it is a Canker; if the Ulcer be hollow and crook-
ed

ed, it is a Fistula ; but if it be a spongy wart, and full of blood, it is an Anbury.

If an Horses tongue be swoln, and hang out of his mouth, it is the Strangle.

To conclude, there are many more signs and symptoms of diseases, the discovery whereof I shall leave to your own industry.

And now I am come to the fifth and last thing which I promised to discourse upon, and which must conclude this Treatise, viz. The means and several ways used to compleat the cure of every individual disease incident to the afflicting an Horses body ; observe this first as a *Proæmium* thereunto.

CHAP. XVII.

General, yet choice, observations in the administration of Physick to Horses.

THe signs and symptoms of diseases will avail you little, if only knowing how to judge of health and sickness, you know not also how to apply things proper to every malady : and to the intent you may avoid all absurdities herein, take these rules.

First, let what ever potion or drench you give your Horse be but luke-warm, for it is of a most dangerous and deadly consequence if you scald an Horses stomach.

Secondly, give him his potion easily, that you may avoid suffocation.

Thirdly, draw out your Horses tongue a little before you clap the horn into his mouth, and then let it slip in again, and that will force him to swallow what he hath received.

Lastly, if you will have your physick work well, keep your Horse fasting, a good while, both before and after the reception thereof; and use him to moderate exercise for the better operation, as walking or trotting him, as you shall find him furnished with strength.

As to the mixing your medicaments, take these three observations.

First, if your Horses distemper be hot, as a Fever, &c. then let your simples be mixed with Oyl, Honey, or warm water.

Secondly, if the disease hath its rise from cold causes, as Coughs, Rheums, &c. then mingle your simples with Wine, or good Ale.

Lastly, if your Horse be weak, and much debilitated by his distemper, then mix your simples with Milk and Egges.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Blood-letting.

Phlebotomy, or Blood-letting, is either to prevent diseases, and so preserve health, or to refrigerate the spirits, or else, to take away blood where there is too much, or else to void and purge gross and foul humours.

In phlebotomy, you are to observe this, first,
to

Of the Excrements of an Horse. 57

to chase or exercise him moderately; then let him rest a day before you draw blood from him, and three days after.

If you find the vein to swell after you have opened it, (as it will do when wind gets in, or when a steam miscarries) then take white Pitch, black Pitch, and Roslin, of each a like quantity, and boyl them together, and lay it on with a flat stick, and then flock it; let it lye all over the swelling, and anoint it with the Oyl of Populeon; once doing this commonly effects the cure; but if once doth it not, then use it oftner, till you have dis-cust the swelling.

If your Horse bleed violently at the nose, and you cannot stanch it, then take Betony, and stamp it in a Morter with salt, and put it into the Horses nose: or if your Horse be wounded, and bleedeth exceedingly, the same applied thereunto, will immediately stop the flux of blood.

Observe, that *April* and *October* are the two principal months for Blood-letting: now, what may be said more on this subject, I shall refer you to the Chirurgical part of this book, treating of the cures of external maladies.

CHAP. XIX.

Of the Excrements of an Horse.

THe Excrements of an Horse are of two sorts, Dung and Urine.

If the Dung of your Horse be of the colour, or somewhat

somewhat near of his food, he is in a sound condition: as for example, if an Horse runs at grass, his dung will be green; if it be bright, and neither too hard nor too soft, it is an excellent sign of an healthy constitution; but if it be fluid and waterish, though it be green, it betokens the Horse troubled with coldness in his stomach and bowels.

If the Dung be neither too thick nor too thin, yet the greenness intermixt with blackness, it signifies the Horse inclined to the Yellows or Staggers.

If the food of an Horse be straw, the colour of his Dung will be a bright yellow, and rather thick than thin; the grain whereof being long, it is a sign of health; but if the Dung be reddish, and either very dry, or as thin as Cow-dung, they are infallible signs that the Horse is inwardly diseased: if this redness do turn to blackness, having lost its scent, it betokens the speedy death of the creature.

If Hay and Provender be the usual food of your Horse, if healthy and sound, the colour of his dung will be a brownish-yellow, moist, and of a grain somewhat long; but if that brownness turn to redness, it is a sign of sickness; if to blackness, then of death.

Lastly, if your Horse feed altogether on Provender, then will his dung be of a pale yellow colour, if he be in health; but if it look reddish, then it signifieth that the Horse hath taken some inward heat, and that there is an inflammation in his bowels and stomach. Now if it be brown, and shiny, or greasy and shining, it is a sign of molten

Of the several sorts of Feavers, &c. 59

möten greafe putrefying in the body. Thus much of an Horſes Dung, now of his Urine.

In the firſt place, if it be of a pale yellow, or ſtraw colour, ſmelling ſtrong, and not very clear, then is your Horſe healthy, well, and luſty; but if its colour be very white, it is a ſign of weakneſs in the Reins, Stone and Obſtruction in the Kidneys.

If the Urine be high coloured like Beer brew'd with over dried Malt, then is that Horſes blood inflamed, ſignifying a Feaver, or ſome great ſurfeit; if blood-red, an heat by over riding, whoſe inflammation is ſo great, that if ſcowering, or ſome other phyſical means be not ſpeedily uſed, the Horſe will fall irrecoverably into ſome mortal diſtemper.

If the Urine be pale and greeniſh, it is a ſign of a Conſumption of the ſeed, and debilitation of the back.

If the Urine be high coloured, yet cloudy and blackiſh, it foretells ſpeedy mortality.

CHAP. XX.

Of the ſeveral ſorts of Feavers in Horſes.

FEavers are uſually ingendred either by over much travel, or diſorderly diet; and theſe Feavers by ſome are divided into three parts; the firſt are bred in the ſpirits; the ſecond in the humours; the third in the firm parts of the body, being all ſet on fire beyond the ordinary courſe of nature.

Others

Others divide them into two parts; The ordinary which are either bred in the humours or spirits; and these are Feavers, *Quotidian*, *Tertian*, *Quartan*, *Heſtick*, *Feavers in Summer*, *fall of the Leaf*, and *Winter*.

The extraordinary are all thoſe which are bred in the firm parts of the body, and are peſtilential Feavers, and the Plague.

The riſe from whence ordinary Feavers proceed, I have told you already, *viz.* from exceſſive Travel, or diſorderly Diet: but the cauſes of extraordinary Feavers, are either corruption of blood, or infection of the Air. Now here is to be noted, that the *Staggers*, *Yellows*, and *Anæcor* never ſeize an Horſe, but a *Peſtilential Feaver* is their *Harbinger* or *Forerunner*: and they are like peſtilential marks, rarely ſeen, but when the diſeaſe is too far gone.

The ſigns and ſymptoms of theſe Feavers, as well as moſt other diſtempers I have declared already, and therefore I ſhall here let them paſs, and fall to the cure.

CHAP. XXI.

A general Cure for general Feavers.

AS ſoon as the Feaver is apparent by the ſigns aforeſaid, ſome will phlebotomize the Horſe in the face, temples, and palate of the mouth, reſtraining him from all food the firſt day, and only giving him by little and little, ſome warm
drink,

drink, giving him good store of Litter, having a care he catch no cold; and as he begins to mend, feed him with boiled Barley, well huskt and beaten.

Others do judge of this to be a better and speedier cure; that is, as soon as you discern his shaking, give him instantly the yolks of five Eggs, beaten with nine spoon-fuls of *Aqua-vite*; and having drunk it, chase him well till his shaking be over; then put him into a warm place, and force him to sweat an hour, by laying on him store of cloaths: let his food in the mean while be Oats well dried and sifted, and once a day some washed in Ale; and let him drink no water, but what is warm: and this course you must take at the beginning of every fit, if you will have your Horse cured of his Feaver.

A cure for a Quotidian Feaver.

This distemper taketh an Horse once a day very violently, but will not last above seven hours in a day, and after his fit, will seem to be as perfect in health as before, till the time of the usual coming of his fit. If his fit change its accustomed time, as if it taketh him at nine of the clock one day, and at six another, the greater hope there is that his Feaver will leave him the sooner.

As for the cure, give him only a sweet mash of Malt and Water Milk-warm, walking him moderately in a temperate Air: his fit being over, rub him down very well, especially his back and legs;

legs; then four or five hours after give him this drink in a horn, thrice at least if his fits continue to afflict him.

*A most approved Drink for an every days
Feaver.*

Take a quart of strong Ale, and seethe therein half an handful of Wormwood, two ounces of long Pepper and Grains, two ounces of the best Treacle, one ounce of the powder of dried Rue; the third part of the liquor being consumed, take it from the fire, and strain it, then put therein three ounces of the powder of Sugar-Candy; when it is luke-warm, make your Horse swallow it, and there will be no fear that he will miscarry, by reason of his present distemper.

A cure for the Tertian Feaver.

This disease taketh the Horse one day, and forbeareth him the other; the one day he shall seem to be very well, and the next he shall be really very sick; when blood begins to abound, that is in the Spring time, then this distemper is most rife among Colts, and the younger sort of Horses; the symptoms are all one with those of the *Quoridian*.

As soon as you perceive your Horse to shake, take a weed called Stone-crop, and so bruise it that you may get from thence four or five spoonfuls of the juice, and mingling it with a quart of
Ale,

Alc, put it into an Horn and give it your Horse; then walk him moderately for an hour; afterwards set him up, and force him to sweat an hour more; then cool him by degrees, and let him not by any means drink cold water, but let his food be the best dry old Oats you can procure.

The cure of the Quartan Feaver:

This Feaver is less violent than the two former, yet of longer continuance; its time of seizing the Horse is every fourth day, as thus; if his fit taketh him on Tuesday, he will seem well Wednesday and Thursday, and be taken again with his fit on Friday: the causes and signs are the same with the other, and the cure differs very little, only, you must not in any wise administer that prescribed Physick above thrice; and if he recovers not then, you must leave his cure to time for its working out.

The Cure of the Heftick Feaver.

An Heftick Feaver when it seizeth Horses, it commonly bringeth death with it, and is the first breeder of a Consumption: the humour is hot and dry which runneth between the skin and the flesh, occasioned by an idle custom of giving over hot drenches, or by using them to drink Beer or Wine.

The signs or symptoms are want of appetite
with

with a raw tongue almost scalded, loose and flabby flesh, with a continual trembling over all his body.

His cure must be effected thus: let his drink be only warm mashes made of Malt and water; and let him eat nothing but sweet Hay, or green Corn blades; but first, wash his tongue with Allom, Running water, Sage, and Wood-bine leaves boiled together; after this, let him have this drink fasting in a morning.

Take of Aloes one Ounce, of Garlick half an Ounce, of Licoras and Anniseeds of each a Drachm, beaten to powder; then put these into a quart of White wine, sweetned with Sugar-Candy or Honey, and made luke-warm for him to drink. Probatum est.

Of Feavers seizing an Horse, either in Summer, Autumn, or Winter; and their Cures.

It is the opinion of most, that Summer Feavers are the worst of all ordinary Feavers, especially in the Dog-days.

The Symptoms of this Feaver are the violent beating of his Arteries, and his evacuating seed with his Urine.

The old way to cure him is to open the great Vein in his hinder Haunch, about four Inches below his Fundament; but by reason it is not easily found, and so by mistake an Artery may be cut instead thereof, I hold it much safer to open
the

the Neck-Vein; having so done, give him a drink three mornings together made of the juice of an handful of Purslane mixt with Gumdragacanth, Anniseeds, and Damask Rose leaves beaten to powder, all put into a quart of strong Ale, sweetened either with Honey or Sugar-Candy; and after this, fail not to keep him warm, as you must during the whole continuance of his distemper.

If your Horse get a Feaver in Autumn, blood-let him in the Neck-Vein, and in the Palate of his Mouth; and then give him this drink following, and never doubt of his recovery.

Take of Germander two Ounces, of Gum Dragacanth and dried Roses, of each half an Ounce; beat them into fine powder; of Oyl-Olive two Ounces, and as much Honey; put these into a quart of Ale, and make them luke-warm; after he hath drank it, let him be walkt, and then set up close and warm.

A Winter Feaver is of long continuance, though not very dangerous; the causes and signs are the same with the rest; but you must be very circumspect in the cure: and in the first place, it is required, that you purge his head well, by sneezing; then phlebotomize him in the Neck, and Palate of the mouth; and about three hours after give him this drink.

Take three Ounces of Rue, half an Ounce of round Pepper, of Bay-berries and Smallage seed, of each half an Ounce, boyl these in White-Wine; and let him not drink till it be luke-warm.

As for his diet, keep him fasting a good while before his fit comes, and give him to drink, nothing but warm Mashes; if you find your Horse extremely weakned by his fits, then use this friction following, whose virtues will loosen the skin, chear up the inward spirits, and spread a lively heat through the whole body. Take this as the most Sovereign friction I have met withal: you must get Oyl *de Bay*, or *Dialthea*, and anoint the Horses body all over therewith, holding a pan of Coals near the Ointment, to make it sink in, rubbing hard against the Hair: but as for Winter Feavers, there is nothing better than this.

Take of Damask Roses one Pound, of old Oyl a Pint, of strong Vinegar a Pint and half, of Mint and Rue beaten into powder, of each an Ounce and half, together with one old dry Nut; beat them, and mingle them well together; and being strained, and made luke-warm, rub the Horse against the hair all over his body, till he begin to sweat; then cloath him, and let him stand.

Now because I nominated before in the cure of this distemper, that first, sneezing should be used for the purging his head; let me lay you down here the several ways of making an Horse sneeze and the excellent use thereof.

CHAP. XXII.

Of several excellent receipts to force sneezing, and their admirable Vertues.

Neezing is wrought sundry ways, either by fumes, smoaks, powders, or Oyls, which tickling the tender and quick parts of the head, enforce sneezing; which is an excellent purgation, not only separating gross matter, but comforting and strengthening the brain.

You may cause this sneezing either by the stale Urine of a man, or that of an Oxe; this is excellent against every days Feaver.

The powder of Gum-Dragacanth, Eufens, and Damask Roses commixt, and blown into the Nostrils of an Horse, is an incomparable remedy against Winter or Summer Feavers. Garlick stalks broke into little pieces, and with Frankincense burnt in a Chafingdish, and held under the Horses nose, and this will cure his head ach. For any obstructions or cold in his head, there is nothing better than a rag anointed with Oyl *de Bay*, and therewith rub his Nostrils as high as you may. For the Glanders, anoint two feathers with Oyl *de Bay*, Euphorbium, and white Ellebore, and thrust these into the Horses Nostrils. For any Cephalick distemper, but especially the Staggers, Cold, Glanders, or Strangle; take the powder of White Pepper, and blow it into his Nostrils, or squirt into them Aristolochia, mixt with Wine, and you will find a suddaine

68 The Gargil, Plague and Murrain.

mendment. But the best fume of all is made of Olibanum, Storax, and Benjamin, being bruised together, and burned under the nose of the Horse.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the Gargil, Plague, or Murrain in an Horse.

THIS Disease hath its original from several causes; sometimes from Surfeits, sometimes from evil Planetary influence; not only corrupting Plants, but several sorts of creatures. Of such an infectious nature it is, that it will not only spread through a Studd, a Shire, but through an whole Kingdome.

The signs of this disease are lowring and hanging down the head, and in a small time after this first observation, you will find a swelling under his Ear-roots, or Tongue; which swelling will be hard, and spread over one side of his face; his Mouth and whites of his Eyes will be yellow, and will have a very stinking breath.

As an Antidote or Preservative, take a pint of Muscadine, and dissolve therein two Ounces of the best Treacle, and give it them.

To cure the diseased; take a good quantity of stale Urine, and mix therein a good deal of Hens-Dung, stirring it till it be all dissolved; take a pint hereof at a time, and in an horn give it your Horse luke-warm.

CHAP.

A Diacatholicon for all Distempers. 69

CHAP. XXIV.

A Diacatholicon, or Universal Medicine for all Distempers.

If at any time (according to the former signs and symptoms,) you find your Horse not well, open his Neck-Vein, taking from him a good quantity of blood; then fasting, give him three mornings together, half an Ounce of Diapente well brewed in a pint of Muscadine; which Diapente you shall make after this manner. Take Gentian, Aristolochia, Bay-berries, Myrrh, and the shavings of Ivory, of each a like quantity, beat them into very fine powder, and searce it. I say, having given him of this powder, then ride him abroad an hour, and then give him what he will eat; at Noon give him a sweet Mash, and at night with a course Rubber rub him well all over, especially his Head and Nape of his Neck; this you must do three or four days together, and you will find a suddain reparation of health.

25.

Here followeth An Alphabetical Account, both as to the names, character, causes, signs, and cures of the most common and dangerous diseases which belong to Horses.

Avives.

Avives is a French appellation for this disease; and is corruptly called by English Farriers the Fives or Vives.

70 Causes, Signs and Cures

Its growth is under the ears, descending downwards towards the Throat, with inflammation and swelling; this disease is dangerous, and often mortal; for this swelling will stop his wind, and choak him, if not timely prevented.

The causes of this distemper are great heats and rankness of blood.

The cure you may effect this one way, which is worth all the rest I have read of.

Take a penny worth of fine Pepper, beaten to fine powder, a spoonful of Swines grease, the juice of an handful of Rue, two spoonfuls of Vinegar; mix them well together, and put it equally into both the Horses Ears, and tie them up with two strings, shaking the Ear so that the Medicine may sink downward; this done, let him bleed in the Neck-Vein, and Temple-Veins, and you need not question the cure of your Horse.

Anticor.

The nature of this disease agreeth with its name, for by reason of immoderate riding, or too hard feeding without exercise, the Horses blood becometh corrupted and inflamed, taking up its residence in and about the heart; and having not speedy vent is the cause of suddain death.

You may know this disease by this sign; just against the heart there will be a swelling, in the middle of the breast: before the swelling doth appear, the signs will be these; he will groan very
much

much when laid down, hanging down his head he will refuse to eat.

Immediately upon the appearance of the swelling, open both the Plate-Veins, or take away a good quantity of blood from both sides of his Neck; having done this, give him a Drink of Diapente with Ale, putting thereto an Ounce of brown Sugar-Candy, and half an Ounce of *London* Treacle, which will expel the grief from his heart; after this anoint the swelling with Hogs grease, Bores Grease, and Basilicon, of each three Ounces; incorporate these well together, and rub the swelling every day therewith, till it come to suppuration or softness; then by opening it let out the matter; then wash your sore with Coperas water, which you shall make thus: take two quarts of fair Water, and adde thereto half a pound of green Copperas, with an handful of Salt; and put these into a Posnet, with a spoonful of Honey, and a branch of Rosemary; boyl these together till one half of the liquor be consumed; a little before you take it off the fire, put to it the quantity of a Wall-nut of Allum; then let it cool, and preserve it for your use.

Having washt the sore clean with this water, then apply thereunto this Oyntment; put into a clean Skillet, of Rosin the quantity of a Wall-nut, being molten, add thereto the like quantity of Wax; and when that is melted put thereunto half a Pound of Hogs grease tryed; and that being melted, put in a spoonful of English Honey; and when these are melted, and well stirred together, put thereunto half a pound of

72 Causes, Signs and Cures

ordinary Turpentine ; this being dissolved, take it from the fire ; then adde of Verdegrease finely pulverized one Ounce ; and so stir them all together ; then set it on the fire, and let it simmer, but if it boyl it is utterly spoiled ; then strain it, and when cold, preserve it for your use. This Ointment is of excellent Vertue to cure old Ulcers, Fistulas, but more especially any green wound.

Bots or Worms in Horses.

It is the opinion of the most judicious, that there are three sorts of Worms which breed in the Bowels of an Horse : First, Bots, being short Worms with great red heads, and long, small, white tails ; next, Truncheons, which are short and thick, being all of a bigness ; and the last are as big as a mans finger, and six inches long, and are only called Worms. Mr. *Markham* by experience hath found out a fourth sort, which are of a middle size, and are red and fiery, with thick, short, sharp heads, and are of all others most dangerous ; for sometimes they will get up to his very throat, and choak him, sometimes eat through his very Stomach, and kill him.

These Worms do proceed from a raw, gross, and Phlegmatick matter, ingendred by foul-feeding.

The signs are ; the Horse will refuse his meat, & will be much addicted to lying down, & rowling on his belly, beating it sometimes with his feet ;

fect : if troubled with the Red Worms, his pain will be intollerable, so that he will beat his head against the ground.

Some approve of this as an excellent remedy ; take the warm guts of a new killed Hen, and mixing them with Salt, thrust them down the Horses throat ; this must be done three mornings fasting, withholding him from water four hours after ; or else give him to drink a spoonful of Soap in a Pint of Milk ; or lastly, take of Gentian, Aloes, and Savin, of each half an Ounce, and brew them together with Honey and strong Ale.

But if it be a Mare with foal, give nothing internally for fear of killing her Colt ; only let her blood in the roof of her mouth, and make her swallow her own blood, which will not only kill the Worms, but help most internal Maladies.

Blood-staling.

An Horse many times instead of Urine, will void pure blood, which is occasioned often times by labouring over much ; and by that means breaking a Vein ; then will there issue from his Yard pure blood, without any other commixture ; but if the Blood be mingled with Urine, then it proceeds from the Kidneys, wounded with a ragged Stone therein : but Mr. Markham is clearly of the opinion, that there is no greater cause of Blood-staling, than the taking up of an Horse in the dead of Winter from Grais, and with-

74 Causes, Signs and Cures

without a days respite, riding him a long journey.

The signs are so apparent, that we will pass them, and fall upon the Cure; and in the first place, it will be proper to phlebotomize him in the Palate of the mouth, or in the Neck; and let the blood be sodden with Wheat, and with the powder of dryed Pomegranat pills; having strained it, give him hereof four or five mornings together; and in the space of time let him not labour by any means.

Or, take a quart of strong Ale and a red Herring, cut it into small peices, and let it lye steeping in the Ale, then give it the Horse with an Horn, and it will stop the inward bleeding of the Horse.

Otherwise, you may take a spoonful of Taron, and steep it in White-Wine, and as much Poppy seed beaten as will lye on a Shilling; give this fasting in the White-Wine, and it is an infallible cure.

Blowing and Pursiveness in an Horse.

Many Horses are naturally thick winded, by reason of their being Cock-thropled and narrow chawled; but most frequently it is so by accident; as when he is fat and over-laden with flesh, by rankness of blood, or by too much foulness in the body; and by these means will upon any exercise sweat, pant, blow, and heave at the Flanks.

To the intent wherefore you may prevent his
being

being broken winded, in time apply your self to the cure ; and let it be in this manner.

Let him feed moderately on Hay, (for Horses so diseased are greedy Feeders) and let the Hay be always sprinkled with water, which will assuage his thirst, and very much cool his inflamed blood ; then give him two Egges steeped twenty four hours in the strongest White-Wine-Vinegar five or six mornings following , and let him swallow the Vinegar afterwards ; then ride him gently an hour after, then set him up warm, and three hours after give him Hay sprinkled with Water, and at night give him Oats, wetted in good strong Ale ; do this ten days, keeping him the while to spare diet, and let his drink be white Water.

This Medicine will both purge and scowre from him much slegm and filth at Nose and mouth ; and if moderately exercised , will be both sounder and better in health a long time after.

Belly-ach.

This Belly-Ach or Fretting in the Belly proceedeth from eating green Pulse, or raw, undried Pease, Beans, or Oats ; or when gross humours, Inflammations, or any sharp matter is gotten between the Pamile and the great Gut.

The signs are great groaning, wallowing, striking at his Belly, and gnawing on the Rack or Manger.

The Cure is, first, to anoint your hand with
Sallet.

76 Causes, Signs and Cures

Sallet-Oyl or Butter, and then thrusting it into the Horſes Fundament, pull out as much Dung as you can reach, which is called Raking an Horſe; then give him a Clyſter of Water and Salt, or a Suppoſitory of Honey and Salt; and then let him drink the Powder of Centaury and Worm-wood brewed with a quart of Malmesey. But the beſt remedy in moſt mens opinion is a Suppoſitory of New Caſtle-Soap.

Broken-Windedneſs.

This diſeaſe may happen by over haſty running a fat Horſe preſently after his Water, or without exerciſe ſtanding too long in the Stable, or foul feeding, whereby ſo many groſs humours may be drawn down into the body of an Horſe, that cleaving to the hollow parts of his Lungs, and ſtopping the Wind-pipes, his Wind may have its recourſe backwards, and not upwards, filling the Guts and diminſhing his ſtrength.

The ſigns of this diſeaſe are violent, beating of his Flanks, drawing his Belly upward, great opening of his Noſtrils, with a ſwift going to and fro of his Tuel, all which are accompanied with a dry Cough.

This is the worſt of all the Diſtempers of the Lungs, and therefore the Cure is the more difficult; however take this method, having been found an excellent remedy by frequent experience, and hath done its work when all others failed.

Take

Take of Parices, Long-Wort, Maiden-Hair, the Crops of Nettles, Carduus Benedictus, the Herb Flueſin, Dragon roots bruised, Eli-campane roots bruised, of Water Hemp, Peni-royal, Light-Wort, and Angelica, of each of these a good handful, bruise them, and lay them all night in two Gallons of Water, let it boyl in the morning, and when it is luke-warm, give the Horse hercof as much as he will drink; after this drink, give him a good quantity of sodden Wheat; use him to this Diet for ten days, and then if the season be convenient, turn him out to grafs.

Others apply this Medicine; they will take his Water for nine days, and boyl Liguorish therein mixt with Wine, and so give it him to drink. I do not deny but this may be a safe and good Medicine, but the first for my money.

Broken Lungs frettized and rotten.

The Lungs are inclosed by a very thin film, and therefore are the more subject to break; and being broken, if the cure be neglected, they will soon impostumate and inflame.

The signs are; when the Horse cougheth his Flanks will beat, but the slower they beat, the disease is the more dangerous, by how much it is of the longer standing or continuance; besides, he will draw his Wind short, groan much, and when he coughs he will bring up something, which he will champ in his Mouth.

To cure him you must give him two or three
Ounces

78 Causes, Signs and Cures

Ounces of Hogs grease, and three Spoonfuls of Diapente, brewed in a quart of Barley-Water, wherein Currans have been boyled.

Or you may take of Fenugreek and Linseed, of each half a pound, of Gum-Tragacanth, of Masticke, of Myrrh, of Sugar, of Fitch Flower, of each one Ounce, let all these be beaten into fine Powder, and then for a whole night infused in a good quantity of warm Water, and the next day give him a quart of this Luke-warm, putting thereto two Ounces of the Oyl of Roses, use him to this ten or a dozen days, and let grasse be his food, for that is best in this condition.

Cold or Pose, the best way to cure it.

If to be had, take one Ounce of the purest and finest paste of Elicampane, which hath the strings at the roots taken from it; if that cannot be gotten, take an Ounce of the Conserve of Elicampane, and dissolve it in almost a quart of Sack, and so give it in an Horn to an Horse fasting; and then ride him half an hour after, and after that let him fast two hours; do this three or four mornings, feeding him as at other ordinary times.

Consumption.

This Disease is called the Dry Malady, and indeed it is nothing else but an Ulceration of the Lungs, proceeding from a sharp corroding humour

mour ingendred by Cold or Surfeit. Some would have this Malady to be the Mourning of the Chine, but they are mistaken, for the Dry Malady, or general Consumption, never evacuateth any thing at the nose; but the Mourning of the Chine ever voideth thereat some filthy matter.

The signs hereof are, Consumption of flesh and strength, the Belly will be gaunt, and the Back-bone hid; he will offer to cough, but cannot, or if he doth, it is but faintly.

This disease is incurable, yet his life may be so prolonged with a competent strength, to do a great deal of labour: to the intent therefore that he may be serviceable, you must purge his head; then give him Cole-worts chopt small in his Provender, and now and then give him the warm blood of a sucking Pig, or the juice of Leeks mixt with Oyl and Wine.

But the best cure is to purge his body clean, with comfortable and gentle Purges; and then suffer him to run at grass a Winter and a Summer, and he will either dye in that time, or be restored to perfect health.

Colt-Evil.

It is a disease in the Yard, Sheath, and Cods of an Horse or Gelding by reason of heat, and rankness of seed; but to a Gelding it happens by weakness and coldness of Seed. The too great abundance of Seed in an Horse causeth a stopping in the Pipe, or conveyance of the Yard: now a
Gelding

80 Causes, Signs and Cures

Gelding for want of strength and heat to send it forth, his seed stops the passage; and so his Yard and Sheath swell very much.

The best way to cure an Horse, is to let him cover a Mare; and after this, ride him up to the Flanks in running Water against the stream.

If this will not do, swim him against the stream five or six days following, and then apply to the part this Plaister.

Take Bean-Meal and Mallows, of each one handful, Hogs grease half a Pound; chop the Mallows small, and so boyl them in a pint of White Wine, when boyled, put it into a cloth, and wrap his Cods up close therein; use this often, and you will not only take down his swelling, or continual erection of his Yard, but heal any excoriation by sharpness of Seed. If he shed his Seed much; then beat Venice Turpentine, and Sugar together, and give him every morning a good round Ball thereof, till you have stayed the running.

Clysters, a general discourse thereof.

A Clyster or a Purgation is defined to be the emptying of superfluous humours; which by their malevolent disposition do cumber and disturb the body; now when nature is too weak to throw off these peccant humours; then Art must be used, either by Purgation, Vomit, Clyster, or Suppository.

Clysters or Glisters and Suppositories contrary to the administration of other Physick, are applied
to

to the Posteriors, whose natures are to purge the Guts, to cleanse Ulcers, to assuage the pains of Belly-ach or Cholick.

Now Clysters are not all of one nature ; for some are laxative, some are restraining, some cleansing , some preparatory to other Physick for its better operation; and therefore my advice is to all Farriers, not to administer any Physick, if the Horse be not soluble in body, till having first breathed a vein, and the next day give him a Clyster.

Now Clysters are made either of Decoctions, or Drugs, or Oyls, and sometimes by the adding of Salt ; and the quantity of these is given according to the age, strength, greatness or corpulency of the Horse : as for Example : If an Horse be lean, small, weak and feeble, then of a Decoction a quart is enough ; if on the contrary, strong, &c. three pints, of Oil half a pint, and of Salt three drachms at most. Of Drugs, as Sena, Cassia, Agarick, &c. you must not exceed the quantity of three ounces at most in one Clyster, and of Butter not four ounces ; and let your Clyster be never more than lukewarm. Before he receive it let him be somewhat empty, by raking, &c. and let him retain it half an hour ; and for the better effecting thereof , let his keeper hold his Tail close to his Tuel, for the space of time aforesaid ; the longer it is kept in, the more effectual it will be to him : observe to draw away the Clyster-pipe by degrees, and not all at once.

Clyster against costiveness, which causeth a loathing to meat, drooping and languishing.

Take the fat of Beef-broth one pint and an half, of good English Honey half a pint, adding thereto of white Salt two drachims; mix these well together, and administer it blood-warm: if it work not in half an hour after you have clapt his Taile close to his Tuel, then ride him a little, but not so much as to make him sweat; then tie him up warm, cloathed and littered, for five hours, in which time he will purge gently, after this give him sweet Hay and white Water, but let him not drink cold water in two days after.

This Clyster is most excellent for opening the body, for purging offensive humours, for removing obstructions, and for cleansing the guts.

Clyster Restraining for an Horse that emptieth himself too much, either by debility, or Nature too much offended.

Take of Mellilot two handfuls, or rather Pellitory and boil it to a Decoction: of this take one pint, adding thereto as much Cows milk (coming warm from her) and put also thereto the yolks of 3 new laid Eggs, well beaten and well mixed with the said liquor, and so give it your Horse blood-warm.

Clyster

of all Internal Diseases. 83

Clyster for a fat Horse, or one newly taken from Grass.

Take Mallows three handfuls, Marsh-mallow-roots cleansed and bruised, and Violet leaves of each two handfuls, Flax-seed three spoonfuls, so many of the cloves of white Lilly roots as you may easily hold in your hand; boil these in fair water from a Gallon to a Quart, then strain it and put thereto of Sena one Ounce, which must be infused or steeped in the liquor three hours standing over the hot embers, then add thereto half a pint of Sallet-Oyl, give your Horse this blood-warm four days before the full and change of the Moon.

Clyster for any desperate sickness.

Take of Oyls of Dill, and Camomile, of Violets, and of Cassia, half an ounce of each, and of brown Sugar-candy powdered three ounces, of Mallow leaves half an handful; boil the Mallows first to a Decoction in fair water, then strain it and put therein all the aforesaid ingredients.

This Clyster is a sovereign help against all Feavers, the Pestilence, all languishing Distempers or Surfeits, and will corroborate and strengthen in a very short time.

Clyster for the Plague or Pestilence:

Take half an Ounce of the pulp of Coloquin-
G 2 tida,

tida, the seeds and skins exempted, three quarters of an ounce of Dragantium, of Centaury and Wormwood of each half an handful, a quarter of an ounce of Castoreum; boil all these in three quarts of water to a quart, then strain it, and dissolve into it three ounces of the broth of Gerologundinum, and of white Salt three drachms, of Sallet-oil half a pint, and so administer it being blood-warm.

Clyster lenitive against Convulsions, Cramps, Costiveness, Surfeit or Foundring.

Take four ounces of Butter, or half a pint of Sallet-oil, and put it to the Decoction of Mallows and give it him Clyster-wise blood-warm; it is a great Cooler of the body, and doth infinitely assuage pain.

Clyster for the Cholick.

Take salt water, or new made brine, a quart, dissolve therein a pretty quantity of Soap, and so blood-warm administer. This Clyster is not only good against the Cholick, Gripping of the Guts, but any other distemper.

Dropfie.

This disease is known by an universal swelling of all the body in general, but especially the legs, through the abundance of water lying between

tween the skin and the flesh, the Belly will swell like to a Mares with Foal, a swelling also betwixt the great Bag and the Kell; this disease is farther known by shortness of breath, loss of natural colour, want of appetite, and a continual thirst.

This disease, which is an evil habit of the body, is engendered by surfeits and unreasonable labour, and is cured by taking two handfuls of Wormwood, and boil it in Ale or Beer a quart or better, and give it the Horse to drink luke-warm morning and evening; at noon let him drink his own water.

But the best and most approved remedy is to take a Gallon of strong Ale, and settling it over the fire, scum off the froth which ariseth; then take a handful of Wormwood with the stalks, and put them therein, and let it boil to a quart, then take it off and strain it well; then dissolve into it three ounces of the best Treacle, and put in also an ounce and a half of long Pepper and Grains beaten to a fine powder; then brew them together till it be luke-warm, and so give it him to drink; the next day let him blood in the Neck-vein, and anoint his Fore-legs with Train Oil; then turn him into good grais, and do not doubt his recovery.

Drenches general for all Diseases in Horses.

If for colds, take half an ounce of the powder called Diapente (the way how to make it I have already discovered in a Chapter foregoing) and brew it with a pint of Sack, if for sickness at

86 Causes, Signs and Cures

heart, brew it in Muscadine, and give it the Horse fasting in the morning: give him this to drink as soon as ever you see him begin to droop, and so continue doing for three or four mornings.

Another Drench you may make by taking two handfuls of Celandine root and leaves, chop them and bruise them; then take of Rue, red Sage and Mint as much, of Aloes half an ounce; boil these in a pottle of Ale to a quart, and give it the Horse luke-warm.

Or take four ounces of Diapente, and mix it with four ounces of Honey clarified, and keep it close in a Glass; then take a pint of sweet Wine, and put half an ounce thereof into it, and it is an excellent Drench.

Take of Liquorish an ounce, of Anniseeds, Cumminseeds and Elecampane roots of each half an ounce, of Turmerick and Bays of each a quarter of an ounce, of long Pepper and Fenugreek of each two drachms; beat these small and sieve them, and put five spoonfuls into a quart of Ale warmed with a little Butter or Oyl.

The powder of Brimstone mixt with sweet Wine is a very good Drench.

The root of the Sea-onion, the roots of Poplar mingled with common Salt, given in water preserveth health a long time.

Garlick and Housleek beaten together in a Mortar, and then boiled in Ale from a pottle to a quart, and mixt with Liquorish, Anniseeds and Sugar-candy, with a pretty quantity of Sallet oil, is an incomparable Drench for any internal maladies proceeding from hot causes. Of Drenches, and their uses, let this suffice,

Diseases

Diseases commonly infesting the Spleen:

The Spleen is the receptacle of Melancholy and the dregs of blood : there is no part of the body more subject to diseases than this is ; for through its Sponginess, it is inclined to suck in all manner of filth, and communicate it to the whole body.

The diseases of the Spleen usually afflict Horses in the Summer, most proceeding from the greedy eating of green food.

The signs of these Maladies are Heaviness, Dulness, pain on the left side, hard swellings, short breath, much groaning.

The speediest way to cure him is to make him sweat ; then take the leaves of Tamarisk bruised, a good quantity of Cumminseed beaten to powder, and boil them in a quart of white wine, and so give it him luke-warm.

This last is not the least, nor a despicable remedy ; Take Cumminseed and Honey of each six ounces, of Lacerpitium as much as a Bean, of Vinegar a pint, and put all these in three quarts of water, and let it stand so all night, in the morning give him a quart to drink, having fasted all the night.

Diseases of the Gall.

If the Liver be troubled with many diseases, so is the Gall ; which is a long slender little greenish Bladder, fixed underneath the Liver, which receiveth all the Cholerick bitter moisture, which would otherwise not only be offensive to the Liver, but likewise the whole body. Now if the passage of this necessary Vessel be stopped, there will certainly follow many diseases ; as the

88 Causes, Signs and Cures

Lax, Bloody-flux, Yellows, and the like. Or if the way whereby such Choler should issue forth of the Bladder of the Gall, down into the Guts and Excrements, is closed up, and so aboundeth with too much Choler; hence proceedeth Suffocation, heat, thirst, and a disposition to rage and fury; and for certain, in any beast there is not a more dangerous disease than the overflowing of the Gall.

The Symptoms of these Maladies are yellowness of the skin, yellow Jaundice, with colliciveness of body.

The Cure is to boil good store of Saffron in Milk, or Ale; Saffron and Anniseeds mixt together. But I am of the opinion that Celandine roots and leaves, chopt, bruised, and boiled in beer, and given the Horse luke-warm to drink, is more sovereign.

But notwithstanding our prescriptions for these maladies, some do confidently affirm that an Horse hath no Gall at all; but that filthy and corrupt matter is wasted and spent either by sweat, exercise, or turns into diseases.

Diseases incident to the Liver.

The diseases of the Liver are many, and do proceed from many causes; as when it is too hot and too dry, too moist or too cold, or by intemperate riding, evil food, corrupt humours, or overflowing of the Gall.

If his distemper proceed from any hot cause, then these are the apparent signs; he will be lean and loath his meat, his thirst will be great, and he will be very laxative.

Now the general heads from whence a disease
in

in the Liver doth proceed, are Inflammation, Inpottumation or Ulceration : If his distemper proceed from a cold cause, it must be by an Ulcer which proceedeth from a cold cause ; and the Symptoms to know it by are, continual coldness of his Body, great feebleness and faintness ; and the reason is, because the ulcerated matter diffuseth ill vapours through the whole body.

So soon as you discover this distemper by the Symptoms aforesaid, let him bleed immediately in both sides of the Neck, and the next day let him bleed in both the Spur-veins, and then give him this Drink.

Take Hissop, Cowslip leaves, Liver-wort, Lung-wort and Harts-tongue of each an handful ; then take Gentiana, Aristolochia rotunda, Enula campana dried, and long Pepper, of each the like quantity, so as when they be pounded and sierced you may have of each a spoonful ; chop the herbs, and then mingle them with a spoonful of live Honey, then boil all these ingredients in a quart of Ale, till one half be consumed, then strain it and give it him blood-warm ; if he refuse to eat, by reason this drink hath made him drie, then give him a warm Mash ; let him rest three days betwixt every Drench.

Ears Impostumated.

This disease hath its rise from several causes, either by a blow about the ears or poll, or else by being galled thereabout with a new Halter ; sometimes it proceedeth from a cold, otherwhiles by bad and peccant humour.

The Signis of this distemper are burning, glowing and swelling about the part, and he will not endure to be touched thereabouts.

For

For the Cure; Take Linseed and make it into a fine powder, and Wheat flower of each half a Pint, ordinary Honey a pint, tried Hogs-grease one pound; mix these well together and warm them on a fire, keeping them stirring continually; then take of this Ointment, and spread it on a linnen cloth or leather, the breadth of the swelling, and so apply it warm, renewing it once in twenty four hours, till it comes to suppuration, and so break; then having cleansed the part, heal it thus:

Take Mel Rosarum, Sallet oil, and ordinary Turpentine of each two ounces; having incorporated them well together, make a bigging for the Horse to keep on the medicine, and tent it to the bottom with this Ointment, applying likewise a Plaister of the same to the place aggrieved, renewing it daily till the sore be well.

Frenzie.

This Frenzie or madness in an Horse is four-fold: first, when some naughty and corrupted blood doth strike only one part of the Panicle of the Brain; and you shall know this by his turning round like a Beast troubled with the Sturdy.

The second is, when a poisonous blood infecteth the middle part of the Brain; then will the Horse be mad, leaping against any thing and running his head against a wall. Thirdly, he is said to be mad when blood filleth his stomachical Veins.

Lastly, he is then frantick indeed, when the poyson of the blood not only infecteth the Brain and Heart, but the Panicles also, which you
may

may know by his biting of every thing comes near him, by gnawing the Manger, and lastly by tearing his own skin in pieces.

The speediest cure is to let him blood in most of the lower parts of the body, to draw down the blood from cumbring his head. The Veins most proper to be opened for this dangerous Distemper are the Shackle-veins, the Spur-veins, the Plat-veins and the Thigh-veins, taking very much blood from them; after this, give him this drink; take the root of wild Cucumber, if not that, a handful of Rew or Mints, and an handful of black Hellebore, and boil them in strong red Wine, and give it in an horn lukewarm.

The Cure which Mr. Markham hath by long experience found most safe, speedy and expedient, is either to make him swallow down hard Hensdung, or else give him to drink the root of Virga Pastoris, stamped in water. As for his ordering during the Cure, his Stable must be quiet, but not close, and his food only warm Mashs of Malt and Water of this but a little at a time, for the slenderer his Diet, the better it is.

Falling Evil.

This Falling Evil is the same which in men is called the Falling sickness, it deprives the beast of all sense whatsoever. It proceeds from gross and cold flegm, gathered together in the fore part of the head betwixt the Panicle and the Brain, which being by any hot vapour dispersed through the whole Body, it doth instantly cause the Falling; the signs of this Distemper are so apparent they need no farther description than this,

this, that all his body will quake and quiver, foam at the mouth; and when you think him past recovery, he will start up and fall to his meat.

To effect the Cure, let him bleed in the Neck-Vein; five days after bleed him in the Temple-Veins and in his Eye-Veins; then anoint his body all over with a comfortable Friction; then bath his head and ears with Oyl *de Bay*, liquid Pitch and Tar mixt together; dropping some thereof into his Ears, make him a Cap of Canvas, quilted with Wool, to keep his head warm, and force him to freeze.

Now because this is a disease that doth not frequently invade the bodies of English Horses, only the *Spanish*, *French*, and *Italian* Horses, I think what already is written of this Malady may suffice.

Foundring in the Body.

This Distemper, of all Surfeits is most dangerous, and most incident to Horses which dayly travel. It proceedeth from suffering the Horse to drink too much in his travail, being very hot; whereby the Grease being suddainly cooled, it doth clap about and suffocate the internal parts with such a loathsome fulness, that without a speedy purgation, death will speedily and inevitably follow.

And this disease may proceed from another cause, *viz.* suddain washing of Horses in the Winter time, when they are both fat and hot by travail; where the cold Vapour of the Water striking into the body of the Horse, benums the inward and vital parts, making the blood to lose

its office, whereby he loseth his strength in such manner, that he can neither go, nor bow his joynts; and being laid, he is unable to rise again.

The Symptoms of this disease are, holding down his head, staring up of his hair, coughing, staggering behind, trembling after water, loathing his meat, stiff-going, and disability to rise when down; but the most remarkable of all signs is, his belly will cling up to his back, and his back will rise up like a Camels.

The first thing you are to do in the curing this Malady, is to rake his Fundament, then give him a Clyster,; finding the Horses belly emptied, then take a quart of Malmsey, of Sugar half a quartern, half an Ounce of Cinamon, of Liquorish and Anniseeds, of each two spoonfuls, beaten into fine powder; which being put into the Malmsey, warm them over the fire, adding thereto some Honey; which being molten, give it the Horse luke-warm; which done, walk him up and down an hour if the weather be tolerably warm, then let him fast upon the bit two hours, being well cloathed and litter'd; and when you give him Hay, let it be sprinkled with Water; and give him his clean sifted Provender by a little at once; his drink must be warm Mashcs of Malt and Water; upon his recovery draw blood from him in the Neck-Vein, and moderately exercise him often.

Fever.

I have in a Chapter foregoing treated of several sorts of Feavers; however, I must not in this place omit speaking something more thereof.

An Horse that is Feaverish may be known by his suddainly falling ill, his heaviness and gauntness of his Belly ; when it first seizeth him, he will quake exceedingly.

The Cure : Take half an Ounce of Diapente, one Ounce of Bay-berries, half an Ounce of long Pepper ; beat these together ; then take half an Ounce of Diascordium, and put all these into a Pint and half of strong Beer, and making it luke-warm, give him it any time of the day to drink, but take no blood from him in any case, it is death if you do ; only cloath and litter him warm ; the Diascordium will cause him to sleep : Now after the Drink hath done working, and the Horse left off sweating, then give him half a Pint of White-Wine and two Ounces of Honey, mixt together, and made luke-warm ; then air him, and four hours after give him a Cordial, made of three pints of stale Beer, and a quarter of a Pint of Honey, and a quarter of a pound of Butter, and a good piece of Household bread ; boyl them a little together, and give it him luke-warm ; and so set him up for that night.

Next morning fasting, give him the Cordial again, and at ten of the Clock give him warm Water and Bran, at three of the Clock White-Wine and Honey, and at night warm Water and Bran. Thus do with airing him sometimes ; and as you see him mend, you may air him oftner ; at which time take some blood from his Spur-Veins, and never question his cure.

Flux in Horses.

A Flux proceedeth from cold, or from drinking too much after eating too plentifully of Provender; for the Water coming thereunto causeth it to swell, whereby crudities are bred in the Stomach, and so carried down to the Guts, and this occasioneth the Flux.

It proceeds sometimes from too soon travelling after Provender, it being not well digested before; or from drinking cold Water when he is too hot; or from eating Hens-Dung, or a Spider.

Be not over hasty in stopping this Flux, unless you perceive he purgeth too much, and over violently; for then undoubtedly Nature is highly offended; and then give him a laxative Clyster, which I prescribed before in the Chapters of Clysters, and that will carry away from him whatever within offends him; a day after give him this Drink, made of Bean Flower and Bole-Armoniack Powder, of each three Ounces, mix them with a quart of Red-Wine, give it him Blood-warm; and afterwards keep him warm in the Stable, giving him Hay and Oats a little at a time.

Another way; Take of wood-Ashes finely searced, and of Bole Armoniack made into a fine powder, of each a like quantity, put them into the water that he is to drink, and let him drink thereof morning and evening; and this will stay his Flux.

Glaunders.

I shall wave what the Ancients have said of the Glaunders, imagining that it comes from the
Latine

96 Causes, Signs and Cures

Latin word *Glandule*, and say that it is a running Impostume, engendred either by cold, over much fasting, or long thirst, or by eating foul meat, or else by infection of other Horses.

It is a Flux or Rheum, which sometimes runneth at one Nostril, sometimes at both: now, he that would perfectly cure this disease, must consider the matter which issueth from the Horses Nose. If the humour be clear and transparent, then it is not very dangerous; if white, it is worse, yet with no great difficulty cured. If it be yellow, it is infectious, yet curable; and therefore separate him from your sound Horses. If that yellow be mixed with red, or if the colour of the matter be like Saffron, the Horse is in a manner incurable.

He ought to consider whether the matter hath an evil smell, if so, it is the sign of an Ulcer; if it stink not at all it is a certain sign of death.

To facilitate his cure you must give him warm Mash of Malt and Water, with purging his head by sneezing; you may then give him any of these several drinks.

First, you may take a pottle of Urine, an handful of Bay Salt, and a good quantity of brown Sugar-Candy, then boyl it to a quart; after this, adde Anniseeds and Liquorish beaten to fine powder, and give it him blood-warm to drink.

Secondly, you may take Swines Grease, and boyl it in Water; then take the fat from the water, and mingle it with a little Oyl Olive, and a good quantity of Urine, and half as much
White-

White-Wine, when it is luke-warm give him a quart thereof to drink.

Thirdly, take a quart of Ale, an Ounce and half of grated bread, the Yolks of two Egges, of Ginger, Saffron, Cloves, Cinamon, Nutmegs, Cardamomum, Lavender, Galingal, and Honey, of these an indifferent quantity; mix these together, strain it, and give it him to drink.

But if the Glaunders be of the worser sort, which will be known by the aforesaid Symptoms; then take half a pound of Swines Blood, adde to it a pound of the juice of Beets, with three Ounces of Euphorbium finely beaten; and when it hath boyled some time, take it off from the fire, and put thereto another Ounce of Euphorbium; keep this Oyntment, and anoint therewith his Nostrils, by dipping two very long feathers, or little rods therein; and so rub them to and fro his Nostrils; then walk him abroad, and do thus four days together; and this by experience hath been found an excellent cure.

Gargel, Murrain, Plague, and Pestilence.

Blood-letting is very dangerous in these Pestilential diseases: The signs when to know an Horse afflicted with this distemper, are, Gummings thick at the eyes, hanging down of the head, staggering as he goeth, swelling of his head, falling away of his flesh, notwithstanding a good appetite to his meat.

For the Cure, take of Diapente the bigness of an Hasel-nut, as much Dialfara, as much London Treacle, as much Mithridate, as much Saffron, an handful of Worm-wood, an handful

of Red-Sage, Rhubarb as much as an Hasel-nut, and two Cloves of Garlick; boyl all these together in a quart of Beer, till it come to a pint and half; then give it him luke-warm, fasting, and keep him very warm, and the next thing you give him must be a warm Mash of ground Malt; it must be his sweating that principally effects the Cure.

Head-ach

Is a pain that cometh from some inward cause, as some cholerick humour gathered together in the Panicles of the Brain, or from some extream heat or cold, or from outward causes, either by a blow or some noysome savour.

The signs are, hanging down of his head, dropping of his Urine, dimness of sight, swoln, with waterish eyes.

The best way to cure him, is to make him sneeze by fumigation; then let him blood in the Palate of the mouth, and keep him fasting fourteen hours afterwards; then spurt into his Nostrils Wine, wherein hath been sodden Euphorbium and Frankincense; after this, feed him, and keep his head warm.

Others advise to let him blood three mornings together, after walk him a while; then cloath him, then cover his Temples over with a Plaister of Pitch; let his meat be little, and his Stable dark.

Hungry Evil, or greedy Worm.

The hungry Evil is an unnatural and over hasty greediness in an Horse to devour his meat faster than he can chew it; and is only known by his greedy snatching at his meat, as if he would devour a piece of the Manger

The

The Cure is, to give him to drink Milk and Wheat meal, mingled together a quart at a time, and to feed him with Provender a little and a little at a time, till he forsake it.

Horse Hide-bound.

Hide-bound is so called, because the skin cleaveth so fast to his ribs, that with your fingers you cannot pull one from the other.

It proceedeth sometimes from Poverty, sometimes from Surfeit, and lastly, from a corrupt dryness of the blood, which wanting its natural course, forceth the skin to shrink up.

The signs are, besides what is already spoken; gauntness of Belly, and the Ridg-bone of his back standing up; if this be not speedily remedied, Manginess will suddainly insue.

The Cure of this disease is diversly laid down; some will have the Horse let blood in the Spur-Veins, and then give him this drink.

Take of Strong Ale a quart, and put thereto three Ounces of Sallet Oyl, of Cummin one Ounce, of Anniseeds two Ounces, of Liquorish two Ounces, beaten all to fine powder, and given him luke-warm in an Horn to drink; having drunk it off, let one chafe his back, from his Huckle-bone upward for an hour or more; then let him stand warm, with good store of Litter about him; then fold about his body a thick Blanket soaked in Water; and this will make him sweat; thus do for a week, and you will loosen his skin.

Others prescribe blood-letting in the first place, then let him drink 4 mornings together a quart of new Milk, with two Spoonfuls of Honey, & one

Spoonful of course Treacle ; let his food be sodden Barley, or warm Grains, and his Drink hot Mashcs.

But the best remedy I can find, and that experimentally, is first, to let him blood in the Neck-Vein, then give him this drink.

Take two handfuls of Celandine, (if in Summer the Leaves, if in Winter, Stalks and Roots) and chop them small ; then take an handful of Wormwood, and an handful of Rue, and chop them also ; put all these into three quarts of strong Ale, and boyl them till it come to a quart ; then take it from the fire, and dissolve therein three Ounces of the best Treacle ; and being luke-warm, give it the Horse to drink ; then for a weeks space, once a day rub all the Horses body over with Oyl and Beer against the hair, and feed him with warm Mashcs of Malt and Water, and let his Provender be Barley sodden till it be ready to break.

Horses lean and unsound, how to fatten them in a Fortnight.

If your Horse be so poor and diseased that you are out of all hopes of his life, then take Anniseeds, Cumminseeds, Fenugreek, Carthamus, Enula-Campana, Flower of Brimstone, brown Sugar-Candy, of each of these two Ounces, beaten, and searced to a very fine powder ; then take an Ounce of the Juice of Liquorish, and dissolve it in an half pint of White-Wine ; then take three Ounces of the syrrop of Colts-foot, of Sallet-Oyl and Life-Honey, of each half a pint ; then mix these with the former powders, and with as much Wheat Flower as will bind them all together

of all Internal Diseases. 101

together ; then work them into a stiff Paste , and make thereof Balls as big as Pullets Eggs, and so keep them close in a Gally pot ; when you would use them, take one, and anoint it with Oyl or Butter, and give it the Horse in the nature of a Pill ; then ride him a little after it, then feed and water him as at other times, giving him this Pill for a whole fortnight together, but if his fatning answer not your expectation, then make a second Ball after this manner :

Take of Wheat-meal what may suffice, of Anni-seeds two ounces, of Cummin-seeds six drachms, of Carthamus one drachm and an half, of Fenugreek-seeds one ounce two drachms, of Brimstone one ounce and an half, of Sallet-oil one pint two ounces, of Honey one pound and an half, of white Wine four pints ; the hard Simples being pu'verized and finely sierced, you must make all these into a Paste, and having kneaded it well, make it into Balls bigger than a Turkeys Egg ; and then every morning and evening when you water your Horse, dissolve into his cold water one of these Balls, by lathering it, and so let him drink thereof.

The Horse at first will, it may be, be very unwilling to drink thereof, if so, let him thirst till he drink it ; for at last he will be forced to take, but having thoroughly tasted thereof, he will refuse all waters for this only ; this is a most excellent Medicine, which not only scowreth, fatneth, but likewise cleanseth the body from all manner of ill humours,

Jaundice.

The Jaundice or the Yellows, proceeds from the overflowing of the Gall and Spleen : of this

Malady there are two sorts : if Choler overflow, by reason of the Gall, then it is the yellow Jaundice, because of the outward appearance of the Distemper, as Eyes, Skin, Mouth, inside of the Lips, &c. are dried and coloured Yellow : if Melancholy abound, by reason of the sickness of the Spleen, the outward parts appear black ; and therefore it is called the Black Jaundice.

Where note, that whilst the matter is yellow, so long the Horse's body is in a very probable way of recovery ; but when the yellow is matted and converted into blackness, it is an evident sign of mortality. Of all the diseases in an Horse's body this is most common, and yet most dangerous, if not timely cured ; wherefore I shall lay down the best receipts I could meet withal.

And first, phlebotomize your Horse in the Neck-vein, and let him bleed so long till you see the blood come very pure ; then give him of this Drink. Take a quart of Ale, and put therein Saffron and Turmerick of each half an ounce, and the juyce that is wrung out of a great handful of Celandine ; and being luke-warm, give it the Horse to drink, keeping him warm, three or four days, giving him warm water with a little Bran in it.

Another way to cure him is ; when you perceive he is troubled with the Jaundice, by the sweating at the roots of his Ears, and by the yellowness of the Whites of his Eyes ; then blood let him in in the Neck-veins, on both sides of the Neck ; then take Elder leaves, Celandine and Camomile of each an handful ; cut them

them small, and give them to the Horse in a pint and an half of the best Beer, being made luke-warm, fasting; keep him warm, and give him warm water to drink for two or three days. So much of the yellow Jaundice; a word or two of the black Jaundice.

It is the opinion of several understanding men, that the black Jaundice is a disease incurable; but because others are of a contrary opinion, I will give you an account of what they prescribe for the Cure thereof.

First rake his Fundament, then give him a Clyster made of Oyl, Water, Milk and Nitrum; then pour into his Nostrils the Decoction of Mallows, mingled with sweet Wine, and let his meat be Grass or Hay, sprinkled with water and a little Nitre, and his Provender dried Oats; he must rest from labour, and be often rubbed: I shall say little to it, only leave it to your own Experience.

Inflammations how to ripen; as Pustuls and Kernels which grow under the Chaw of an Horse.

These Pustuls and Kernels, proceeding from Inflammations occasioned by colds, &c. must be dissolved, otherwise all remedies will prove insignificant; wherefore to bring these Pustuls to suppuration, you must take Wheat-bran two handfuls, and a quart of Wine or Ale to thicken it with, put to it half a pound of Hogs-grease; boil these together till the Liqueur be quite consumed, and so apply it to the place, as hot as the Horse can endure it, renewing it every day, till it be so soft as that it be fit to be opened to let out the corruption; then tent it with Flax dipped in this Salve,

But if the Inflammation be impostumated, you may then take of the grounds of a Beer-barrel a Gallon, of Smallage, Peniroyal, Winter Savory, Cumfrey, Rew, and of the Berries and Leaves of the Mistletoe of each two handfuls, chop these very small, and put them to the Beer grounds, and add thereunto Deer or Sheeps Suet tried, one pound, and three or four handfuls of Rye or Wheat-bran, so much as will serve to boil these to a Poultice; then apply it to the place, and let it be never so much impostumated it will either break or soften it; but if it be very hard, it will discuss and divert the humour some other way.

Kidney Infirmities.

The Kidneys are frequently afflicted with Inflammations, Obstructions, Aposthumes and Ulcers; and these are occasioned by some great strain, by over-riding or over-bearing.

The usual Symptoms of the distempers in the Kidneys, are discerned by his staggering and rolling as he goeth, his Urine will be thick and blackish; if he hath stones, they will be shrunk up; if none, his sheath will be drawn backward.

The Cure: Bathe his Back and Loins with Oyl, Wine and Nitrum warmed together, and after he is bathed, cover him with warm cloths, and let him stand in Litter up to the Belly; then give him to drink water wherein hath been sodden, Dill, Fennel, Anniseeds, Smallage, Parsley, Spikenard, Myrrh and Cassia, or as many of these Simples as you can well procure. The next morning fasting, give him a quart of Ews milk,

milk, if you cannot get that, then half a pint of Sallet oil, with the root of Daffadil boiled in wine, and let Oats be his Provender.

If the Horse be troubled with the Stone, which you will discover by his often straining to piss, but cannot; then take an handful of Maiden-hair, and steep it all night in a quart of strong Ale, and give the Horse to drink every morning, till he be perfectly cured; this is an infallible Medicine to break, in an Horse, any stone whatever.

Loathing of meat in an Horse.

This is a disease proceeding from the intemperature of his Stomach, occasioned by rankness of blood, or overmuch travel. Dayly experience makes this latter apparent; for if an Horse be ridden hard, and put up into a Stable hot, he will refuse his meat; and hence it is that I cannot but condemn baiting at Noons (a vulgar ignorant custom) because a journey commonly craves haste, so that an Horse is not admitted to take so convenient a cooling as is requisite, before his meat, which breeds many distempers.

Now to cool him moderately, either wash his tongue with Vinegar, or give him to drink Oyl and Vinegar mingled with cold water.

But if the loathing of his meat proceed from the coldness of his Stomach, which is only known by the standing up and stovering of the hair; then give him Wine and Oil to drink, mixed, divers mornings together; or Wine, Oil, Sage, and Rice boiled together, giving him thereof a quart at a time.

Some again will give him Onions, pilled and chopt, and Rocket-seed boiled and bruised in Wine; others mingle Wine with the blood of a Sow-Pig.

But to conclude : Take this as the best remedy for any general forsaking, or an Horse's loathing his meat, whether it proceed from hot or cold causes in the Stomach; and that is, when there are green Blades of Corn, especially of Wheat, give your Horse a good quantity thereof; if it be at such a time, as that they cannot be procured, then give the Horse sweet Wine, and the seeds of Gith mixt with it, or else sweet Wine and Garlick, well pilled and stamp'd, brewing it a good while together; this is a sovereign remedy in maladies of this nature.

Lask, or Bloody Flux.

The Lask or Lax is an unnatural looseness in an Horses Body, which, if not in its due time stay'd, will bring the Horse to great debilitation and weakness; this disease proceedeth from very many causes; wherefore I shall pass them over, and only inform you, that as you must have a care not to stop it too soon, so let it not run too long; both being of an equal dangerous consequence. As long as you find the strength and good estate of your Horse continue, you may let him scowre, but when once that begins to impair, you must put a stop to its farther course; which you may do several ways.

As first; take of Bean-flower and Bole Armoniack, of each a quartern, mix them together with a quart of red Wine; give it him lukewarm, but be sure to keep him warm, and expose

expose him to no labour for some small time.

Or secondly, you may take an handful of an herb called Shepherds-purse, and boil it in a quart of strong Ale; then take the seeds of Woodroof stamp'd, and when the Ale is luke-warm, put them thereinto and give it the Horse to drink. Let his drink in this mean while be warmed, mingled with Bean-flower, but give him not his full draught at a time, and when you give him any, let it be but once in eighteen hours.

Others, and not unadvisedly, take the powder of one Nutmeg, half an ounce of Cinamon, and as much of the rind of a Pomegranat, and mixing these with a pint of red Wine, give it the Horse luke-warm to drink.

But if this Disease happen to a sucking Foal, as it is frequently seen, by reason of the fluidness of his Diet; then give him a pint of Verjuice, which curdling the Milk, will thicken his excrement, and is, I can experimentally assure, a speedy Remedy.

Now as to the Bloody Flux, it is undoubtedly occasioned by some sharp humour excoriating the Guts, or from some exulceration thereof.

The signs of this distemper are very apparent, therefore I shall not need to describe them; wherefore I shall only prescribe the Cure, and that may be effected several ways; as by dissolving four ounces of the Conserve of Sloes, in a pint of red Wine, and so with your Horn give it him to drink: but the most approved Remedy
is

is this ; take half an handful of Shepherds-purse, and as much Tanners Bark, taken out of the Fat and dried, a little Cinnamon ; boil these in three pints of red Wine, to a quart, and then straining the liquor, give it your Horse lukewarm to drink.

Molten Grease.

If an Horse be Grease-molten, or foundred in the Body, then open the Neck-vein, and draw away the corrupt and inflamed blood ; then take a pint of white Wine, half the quantity of Sallet-oil, of Rhubarb two drachms, and the like of Aloes, half an ounce of Sena, three drachms of Agarick, half an ounce of Bay berries, two drachms of Saffron, of Duck and Cordial powder two drachms ; pulverize what is to be pulverized, and having mixt them well together, add thereunto four ounces of life Honey, give him this blood-warm ; let him fast four hours before he take it, and as many after ; let him have no Oats that day, nor any other drink than sweet Mash, and be sure to keep him very warm.

Mourning of the Chine.

This Distemper, by the experience of such who have frequently opened Horses, is found to be a Corruption or Consumption of the Liver ; this Consumption proceeding from a cold which is afterwards converted into a Pose, that into the Glanders, and lastly, into the Mourning of the Chine.

To avoid prolixity, or the variety of Cures, which every man, according to his own fancy, thinketh best, I shall give you two, which (*in-*
star

star omnium) are lookt upon by the most Expert the best Remedy for this Malady.

Take of the Bark of an Elder-tree, growing by the water side, as much as will fill an ordinary Pipkin, add thereunto as much running water as the Vessel will hold, and boil this liquor half away, then fill it up again, and continue so doing thrice, after the consumption of the water; and take it off the fire, and add thereunto a third of the Oil of Oats, or the like quantity of sweet Butter or Hogs-grease, and being warmed again, take a quart thereof and give it the Horse to drink; one hornful at his Mouth, and the other at that Nostril which evacuateth the matter. Let your Horse be fasting when you administer to him this Drink, and you will find it not only an excellent Cure for this malady, but also for all others proceeding from any cold whatsoever. Let his meat be boil'd Barley, and his drink warm Mashcs; but if the season will permit, his best food will be to turn him to Grass: but that which I shall particularly commend to your observation and practice is, Take two drachms of Auripigmentum, and of Tussilage as much pulverized, then mix them into a kind of paste with Turpentine, and make little cakes thereof, drying them before the fire; then take of these cakes, as much as you shall think sufficient, and put thereof into a Chafing-dish of coals, and covering it with a Tunnel; when it smoaketh, put the end of the Tunnel into his Nostril, that the fume may ascend into his Head; then ride him till he sweat: thus do before you water your
Horse

Horse every morning till you find his Nostrils leave running, and that those Kernels or hard lumps at the root of his tongue be dissolved.

Night-Mare.

This is a distemper which very much afflicteth Horses, as well as Mankind, seizing both so violently, that the breath will be so stoppt, that it will cause a struggling and a striving, so that an excessive sweat and faintness will follow.

It comes only in the Night, and it proceeds from Crudities, and ill digestion; whose ill vapours do not only disturb the head, but likewise all the sensitive parts.

The signs are, coming to your Horse in the morning, you shall find him all of a sweat, one drop driving the other, panting, and sweating, principally in his Flanks, Neck, and roots of the Ears.

The Cure is, Mornings and Evenings, both before and after Water, to give him a good moderate exercise, and having brought him into the Stable, rub him well down, giving him Oats, mixed with an handful of Hemp-seed.

Now by the way, take notice that there are other distempers which proceed from the same cause as doth the *Night-Mare*, viz. the *Falling-Evil*, *Planet-Struck*, and *Palsey*; and these may seem to have different natures and dispositions, whereas they are all the same, having one rise or original, which is only cold Phlegm, or thick humours ingendered about the Brain, and benumbing the Senses, and so weakning the Members, that they cause sometimes the Horse to fall

fall down, and then it is the *Falling-Sickness*; sometimes they seize and weaken one Member only, and then this Malady is named *Planet-Struck*; sometimes it spoileth some particular member by some strange contraction, and then it is called the *Palsy*; and lastly, when the humour oppresseth the Stomach, lying heavy at the Heart, stopping his Breath, and making him Sweat, then it hath the appellation of the *Night-Mare*.

As all these Distempers proceed from one cause, so I shall prescribe but one Medicine: Take three spoonfuls of Tar, and of Butter the like quantity; beat them well together with the powder of Liquorish, Anniseeds, and Sugar-Candy, till it be like a Paste; then make these into three balls, putting to each ball three cloves of Garlick; then take your Horse fasting, and give them him, and let him fast four hours after.

Over-gorged Horse.

The signs of an Horse over-gorged, are swelling and slavering, so full as if the skin were ready to burst: as soon as you have discovered his distemper, take a quarter of a pound of Cattle-Soap, scraping it thin, and putting it in two Ounces of *Dialphera*, bray them in a Mortar together, and make them up into balls as big as an Egge, and lay them by till you have occasion to use them; one of these balls you must dissolve into a pint and half of strong Beer scalding hot, and give it him luke-warm; one of these balls will effect the cure, for it will soon cause him to empty himself by Urine and scouring.

112 Causes, Signs and Cures

Purgations, their nature and manner of Administration.

There are five several ways by which an Horse may be purged; First, by Pills and they are principally for the head, drawing down all peccant humours from thence into the body; and carrying them off with the Excrements. Secondly, Potions, which do cleanse the Stomach, Belly and Guts, throwing off all ill humours, which are there offensive. Thirdly, Clysters, and they are of several sorts; some to bind, some to loosen, some to heal Ulcers, and others to mitigate the sharpness of peccant humours. Fourthly, Suppositories, which are more mild and gentle than your Clysters are, and may be administred when they cannot.

Now it is very requisite, that the expert Farrier know how to make choice of his Ingredients; and when gotten, how to compound them; and lastly, for what diseases or maladies they are most applicably proper; and that you may not be ignorant of the nature of some Simples, know that Colliquintida, Scammony, and Elebore are strong; Manna, Cassia, and Prunes are more gentle; those which hold a mediocrity in their operation, are Rhubarb, Agarick, Aloes, and Sena.

Now there is a fifth way of purgation, and that is by Grass; that which will scowr most is a new mown Meadow; for that will not only rake his guts, but keep him from gathering flesh; and therefore it will not be prudence to suffer him to run there above twelve or thirteen days, and then away with him to some other Grass untouched

touched by thy Sithe, and in a little time he will belly and recover flesh.

But as for Purgations in the Stable you must heedfully follow their precepts, who have travailed far in this Art and Myſtery; and firſt, of all, the Seaſons of the year muſt be duly conſidered. For if you are to give your Horſe in Winter a purge, you muſt firſt prepare him by breathing a Vein, keeping him in a day or two from feeding on any meats that are hard of concoction, as Hay or Straw. To this intent therefore, let his meat be (for three or four days before) Wheat or Rye Bran prepared, Beans, Peaſe or Oats well ſifted, and let him take his purgation faſting.

If you will purge away his ill humours engendered by ſurfeits, filth and ſlime, then take a pint of White-Wine, or a quart of ſtrong Ale, and put herein as much of the powder of the beſt Mechocacan as will lye on a ſhilling at four times; having given him this luke-warm, trot him out a Mile or more, and having ſtood upon the Trench till noon, give him a warm Maſh.

Whether in Summer or Winter, if you perceive your Horſe ſurfeited, full of colds, or generally indiſpoſed; firſt, phlebotomizing him, give him a purge in this manner. Take two Ounces of Aloes Succotrina pulverized, and with ſweet butter make it up into Pills; give them to him over night, having faſted the day before, and the next morning give him a ſweet Maſh, which will make the Pills work the more kindly, and ſo let him faſt till towards the Evening; and in that time they will clear his body

114 Causes, Signs and Cures

wonderfully ; some Horses are of so strong a constitution, they will not purge till the second day, and therefore be careful in the mean time how you order him.

When you think he hath done purging, give him a sweet Mash, then Oats and Bran, and for all night Hay sprinkled with Water.

If you will purge the body of an Horse newly taken from Grass ; first rake him, and then give him this Clyster.

Take of Willows three handfuls, Marsh-Mallow roots cleansed and bruised, and Violet leaves of each two handfuls, Flax seed three spoonfuls, so many of the Cloves of white Lilly roots, as you may easily hold in your hand ; boyl all these from a Gallon to a Wine quart ; then strain it, and put thereto of Sena one Ounce, infusing it in the liquor three hours over the Embers, and put thereunto an half pint of Sallet-Oyl, which being blood-warm, administer Clyster-wise.

The next day after give him this drink ; Take a quart of the strongest Ale wort, a quarter of a pint of ordinary Honey, two Ounces of London Treacle, mix and brew all together very well.

There are several other sorts of purgations, which for brevity sake I shall omit, referring you to the ingenious indeavours of Mr. Thomas Grey in his *Expert Farrier*.

Piss, how to make an Horse vent his Urine that is troubled with obstructions, or otherwise.

You must first draw out his Yard, and bathe it well with White-Wine, and lest it should be stopped with dirt, pick it and scowr it well ; then

then put a little Oyl of Camomile into his Yard, with a little Wax Candle, and a bruised Clove of Garlick; if that will not effect your purpose, then take this course to force him to stale, viz. Take two handfuls of Parsley, of Coriander one handful, stamp them well and put them into a quart of Wine, wherein was dissolved an Ounce of Cake Soap, and give it him to drink luke-warm: but some of none of the least skilled in what appertains to an Horse, give only White-Wine, Cake Soap, and Butter well mingled together, making him drink it luke-warm.

But Mr. *Markham* by his own experience finds nothing for this distemper more soveraign, than to take a quart of strong Ale, and put it into a pottle pot; then take as many keen Radish roots clean washt, being slit through, and bruised, as will fill up the pot; then stopping the pot very close, so that it cannot admit of Air, let it stand so four and twenty hours; then strain the roots and Ale very hard into a clean vessel, and give it the Horse in a morning fasting; then ride him, but not violently; and having done this several times, your Horse will be so freed from those stoppages or obstructions, that he shall piss very freely.

Pissing of Blood.

This disease happens several ways, either by the Stone, or exposing an Horse to a leap beyond his ability, or by over hard riding. I need not describe the signs, since they will be very visible to the eye; we are then only to take cognizance of the Cure, which is thus performed.

Take of Blood-wort and Shepheards Purse, of each three Ounces; stamp them well, and boyl them in fair water; and when strained, and the liquor blood-warm, give it the Horse to drink; follow this course five several mornings together.

Or thus; having cleansed his Sheath and Yard from all manner of filth with broken Beer and Butter, then let him blood in the Neck and Mouth; then having steeped green Onions in water in a vessel closely stopped eighteen hours, take of the liquor one pint, and adde thereunto a pint of White-Wine; then tumble them together till they appear slimy, and so give it him to drink; this given him eight mornings together, will not only stop his flux of blood, but reduce his Urine to its pristine colour.

Pursiveness, how cured.

There are some Horses naturally troubled with this distemper, as being Cock-thropped, that is to say, the Wind-pipe is over long, and so thereby becoming crooked, his wind is obstructed, and vents it not but with great difficulty; but as this infirmity is natural, so I judge it incurable, and therefore we shall only treat of that pursiveness which cometh accidentally, and that is, when the Thropple is too much filled with fat, or over strained upon his water, which often happens by the watering course (as they call it) of an over confident Ignoramus; or it happens sometimes by much Galloping on a full Stomach; and lastly, it comes by Colds and Glanders.

You need no symptoms, they are so apparent; but as for the remedy, take of new Milk one
pint,

pint, of Saller-Oyl half as much; give him this blood-warm, and then thrust down his throat two new laid Egges; let his Hay be sprinkled with Water, and his Oats washt in Ale; and by doing this four or five mornings, you will find an amendment. If you find this doth not answer expectation (for the best of Remedies cannot plead Infallibility;) then take of Barley two gallons, steep it in Water two days, and shift the Water every day; then take it clean from the water wherein it was first steeped, and boyl it in three gallons and an half till it burst, adding thereto of Anniseeds, Liquorish, and Raisins of the Sun, of each a pound; but let the Raisins be stoned; so let it boyl one hour, then take it from the fire, and strain it every dry, then put to the liquor one pint of Honey, and of Sugar-Candy powdered six Ounces; then put your liquor into a clean Earthen bottle, keeping it closely stopped; and four mornings together give your Horse thereof to drink blood-warm, not much above a pint at a time; lay the Barley before him, and if he will eat he may; if not, put some thereof into a bag, and perfume his head therewith; this Medicine hath been approved of by the most experienced Farriers in *England*.

Rot in Horses.

It is one thing for an Horse to be said he is rotten, and another thing to say he hath the Rot; for to be internally rotten is incurable, but to have the Rot is to be afflicted with the Dropsie, or some other disease of near a kin.

This disease happens to Horses frequently very young, as when Colts feed in Marshy and wet grounds;

118 Causes, Signs and Cures

grounds; or when but newly backt, and over-ridden, their blood becomes inflamed; thence comes putrefaction and corruption, thence *Pustuls* ingender in the *Liver*, which produce either *Dropsie*, *Feltrick* or *Rot*.

The most remarkable signs of this distemper is after a journey a swelling and burning in his legs, and having prest the part with your fingers, there will remain a dint or pit, he will pant much, lift and beat in the Flanks, with a swelling under his belly, &c.

The method of the cure must be first, to bleed him under the Tail, then take of Mares Milk, or Red Cows Milk two quarts, then take a lump of Acrement, and then if you can get the sweat of a young black Horse, and mingle the Acrement with the Sweat and Milk; mix these well together, and divide it into three parts, giving him one thereof each morning, but let him not drink after it in eight hours; if the Season will afford them, give him after this the green blades of Rye, if not, Barley steeped in new Milk. But after this, if you feel him cold in the Pasterns and Joynts, and that he ever and anon stumblers as you lead him, look upon him as lost and irrecoverable.

Strangury or Strangullion.

The bladder of an Horse according to the opinion of the skilful, is troubled with three very dangerous distempers, viz. the Strangury, Pain-piss and Stone.

The Strangury or Strangullion is, when the Horse hath great inclination to stale, and yet cannot void his Urine, unless it be by drops. It commonly

commonly proceeds either from Sharpness of the Urine occasioned by over much travail, or else by exulceration of the Bladder, or finally, some Aposthume in the Liver and Kidneys; which breaking, and the matter falling into the Bladder, the sharpness thereof causeth a continual desire to pisse without ability.

For his Cure, bathe the Horses hinder loins with warm water, then take bread and Bay-berries; and tempering them with *May Butter*, convey down his throat two balls thereof for three mornings together; or take a quart of new Milk, and a quartern of Sugar, and brewing them well together, give the Horse to drink thereof five mornings together.

Otherwise, make a strong Decoction by boiling your first quantity of Water to half a pint three times over with keen Onions clean pilled, and Parsley; then take a quart thereof, and put thereunto a spoonful and half of *London Treacle*, and as much of the powder of Egge-shells finely searced, and give thereof to the Horse to drink several mornings.

Lastly, take this incomparable receipt which hath been by divers tryed with great success: You must get Saxafrage, Nettle-roots, Parsley-roots, Fennel-roots, Sperage-roots, & of Dodder, of each one handfull; bruise all these Ingredients together, and boyl them on a gentle fire with White-Wine, until a third part be consumed; then put to it of Salt one handfull, of Sallet Oyl and the lard of Goats of each three Ounces, of Honey half a pound, when all these are boyled, strain and wring them very hard; and of this li-

Quor give your Horse one pint every morning tasting blood-warm. But if in the standing or boyling it become thick, dissolve it again with White-Wine, and after the first boyling, it must be only warmed.

Shedding of the Seed.

This shedding of the seed is no more than what among men is called the Running of the Reins : the general cause from whence this infirmity doth arise is from either the abundance and rankness of the seed, or from the weakness of the seminal vessels, which are not capable of retaining the seed till it is arrived to its proper thickness ; but there is yet one more probable cause than what is already alledged, and that is by over much covering Mares, or by some great strain in leaping.

There are some that take this way to cure him, by riding the Horse up to the belly in cold water, so that his Stones may be covered therewith, bathing his fundament with Water and Oyl, then covering him warm, give him every day to drink Red-Wine and Hogs-Dung : but if you will be better advised, and that by long experience, take my counsel ; get a quart of Red-Wine, and put therein a little Acatium, the juice of Plantain and a little Mastick, and give it him to drink : after this, bathe all his back with Red-Wine and Oyl of Roses mixt together ; or take Venice Turpentine washt clean, and beat it well with half so much Sugar, and then make round balls as big as Wall-nuts, and give the Horse of these restraining pills five every morning till you have stopt the flux of his seed.

Sudden Sickneſs, what to be done therein.

As ſoon as ever you perceive your Horſe not well, according to the ſigns aforemention'd, bleed him preſently in both ſides of the Neck, to the quantity of two quarts, and after that make this Drink for him: Take of ſweet Sack one quart, and burn it with Grains, Cloves, and Cinnamon, of each a like quantity; having beaten them groſs, add to them three ounces of Sugar, and when it is burned, put thereunto half a pint of Sallet-oil, and two ounces of *London-Treacle*; warm all theſe, and being well brewed together, give it your Horſe luke-warm to drink; then ride him gently, till you perceive he begins to ſweat, and ſo ſet him up well littered and cloathed, making him to ſtand five hours or more ſomewhat: after he is well rub'd down, give him clean Wheat-ſtraw, with clean dry Oats, ſome Wheat and Peaſe mixed therewith, and let his Drink be a warm Maſh.

Stavers or Staggers.

Though the names of this diſeaſe do ſeem to differ, yet their natures are all one, conſiſting of a dizzineſs in the head, and near a kin to the Frenzie, when it ſeizeth the Brain.

Several are the cauſes of this dangerous Diſtemper; the common riſe or original hereof is, evil digeſtion and corrupted humours, whoſe poiſonous vapours do not only diſtract the head, but diſtemper the whole body.

The Symptoms are very evident, for his ſight will ſo fail him, that he will not be able to ſee a Poſt before him but run againſt it, beſides ſlavering at the mouth, and running at the eyes with

with filth and matter, often lying down, and beating his head against the ground.

The Cure is, to take the seeds of Cresses, Poppy, Smallage, Parsley, Dill, take also Pepper and Saffron of each two drachms ; make them all into fine powder, and put unto them of Barley-water two quarts, as it cometh boiling from the fire, and let it infuse therein 3 hours, and then strain it and give him a quart thereof in the morning fasting ; then walk him an hour or more, and set him up warm, giving him Hay sprinkled with water, and let him not drink cold water five or six days after, but instead thereof give him a sweet Mash.

Sleeping Evil.

This is a very strange disease in an Horse, and is of the nature of a Lethargy, infesting the bodies of Mankind : and as the person thus afflicted will sleep continually, having lost his memory quite ; so will the Horse get into a Corner and hang down his head to the very ground.

The Cure is somewhat difficult ; however, thus you must do, if you intend it : First, let him bleed on both sides the Neck, in the morning fasting ; also take some blood from the third stair in his mouth ; then take of Camomile and Mother-wort of each three handfuls, cut small ; boil these in two quarts of running water half an hour, and then give the Horse a pint once in two days fasting, and give him the rest the third day fasting, and four or five hours after give warm water, and a Mash of ground Malt put into scalding hot water, after it comes off the fire ; keep him warm all the time of his cure,
and

and you will do well to fume his head, as you do in the Staggers.

Surfeits of all sorts.

Though in the Title I seem to treat generally of Surfeits, yet I shall speak in particular; and first of that inward dry Surfeit which causeth the Cods to swell, either continually, or betwixt whiles; to the intent therefore that you may arrive at the Cure, mind these following Instructions.

You must first purge your Horse after this manner: Take an ounce of fine Aloes, which glitters, for that is the best, then pulverize it or beat it to powder; then take three ounces of fresh Butter, mix these two well together, and add thereunto so much Wheat-bran as is sufficient to make it into a Paste, and make thereof five or six Balls; then convey one of them as far into his mouth as you may, that he may the better swallow it, giving him an hornful of strong Ale to wash it down; then give him a second, a third, a fourth and the fifth, still interlining them with an hornful of Beer or Ale, to wash them down; after this, ride him out for an hour gently, then let him up warm; keep him fasting six hours after he hath taken his Pills, giving him some Hay at night, and not before, with warm water to drink, and the like the next day.

But the third day, after his purgation is over, give him cold water, and immediately after it two ounces of Honey, and half a pint of white Wine a little warmed, for that will make him stale, clearing his Bladder, and procuring an appetite; then air him gently for an hour and

124 Causes, Signs and Cures

an half, doing thus morning and evening till he be well.

But if what you have given him, do neither sharpen his stomach nor purge him ; then take three pints of stale Beer, three ounces of course household bread , mixing them together , and setting them over the fire ; being well boil'd take it off, and put therein a quarter of a pound of Honey, and three ounces of fresh Butter, give him these blood-warm, and ride him moderately a mile afterwards ; then set him up warm , and let him stand upon the Trench about two hours after it : then give him a Mash of sodden Oats till they burst with warm water and Wheat-bran therein ; this in twice or thrice giving will procure him a stomach, and render him laxative withal.

Now if his Cods be swell'd , occasioned by this Surfeit ; as soon as his Purge hath done working, take the charge of Sope and Brandy, and with a stick dabb it on his Cods (or other swelling proceeding from the same cause) as it comes boiling from the fire ; do this but once, and four days after ride him into a River, against the stream, so deep that he is ready to swim, for near a quarter of an hour, thus using him once or twice a day , till you find his swelling abate.

If it be a dry Surfeit, give the Purge first, and afterwards the Cordial , made of white Wine and Honey ; but if he run at Nostrils, give him a Drink made of Anniseeds, Turmerick, Brandy, Vinegar and Beer, and three days after let him have the Purge : in like manner do if his Grease be melted.

This

This aforementioned Purge and Cordial are not only good against any dry Surfeit, but also for melted Grease, set and dried in the body, and legs swelled, or when an Horse is Gaunt, Gut-foundred and costive.

There is another sort of Surfeit, which is moist, hot and running, that from the Body falls into either fore-legs, hind-legs, or sometimes into all four.

It proceeds from colds and heats, occasioned several ways, and the distemper is very troublesome and loathsome, however not very difficult to be cured, if you will observe this Method.

First, let him bleed in the Neck-veins, but before you do it, keep him fasting most part of the night before; having let him bleed freely, give him a drink made thus:

Take of Aristolochia one ounce, of Turmerick one ounce, of Anniseeds dry one ounce; beat the Anniseeds and Turmerick small, and grate the roots of Aristolochia; put these together with one handful of Rew, and one handful of Wormwood, and one handful of red Sage, one handful of green Fennel, or two ounces of the seeds thereof; then let all these steep together in three pints of water all night.

Now before you give him hereof, ride him out a mile or two, to warm him a little, and then give him this water as it stood cold all night, then ride him a mile more, and after this let him stand six hours on the bit; then give him a little Hay, and after that warm water and Bran: he must not drink but once a day, riding him two or three miles after it.

At the expiration of three days, give him the same drink, using him as you did before in every circumstance; observing so to do every third day, till you have exsiccated or dried up those humours which are so offensive to him.

Staling free.

If an Horse be troubled with any obstruction whereby he cannot stale free, I know no better remedy than this : Take half a pint of white Wine, and infuse therein all night an handful of Nettle-seeds, with one ounce of Ivy-berries beaten to powder; the next morning fasting give it him cold, then ride him for an hour moderately, and after that tie him to the rack three or four hours; do this constantly every morning, till you perceive him stale freely, which will be in a little time; for it wonderfully cleanseth the Kidneys of Sand and filth, dissolveth the Stone and purgeth Gravel.

Squinzie or Strangling.

The Squinzie is a disease both troublesome and dangerous to Horses, for it commonly breeds the Canker in the mouth, and at the roots of the tongue, afflicteth the Stomach with a great deal of tough Phlegm, which he is not able with all his endeavours so to cast forth, but that he is forced to swallow it down again.

His breath will be exceeding hot, and his mouth fiery red; the Canker, if he have any, you will find by the stench of his breath; and these are the usual signs and symptoms of this noisome and destructive Malady.

The speediest cure is to take one ounce of Anniseeds, an ounce of Turmerick beaten to powder,

der, half a quartern of Brandy, a quarter of a pint of white Wine, a pint and an half of Beer; put these into a Posnet, and only heat them blood-warm, and give it him fasting, and immediately after he hath taken it, run the point of the Cornel-horn into the third Furrow of the roof of his mouth, and so bleed him, then walk him a mile, and set him up; be sure you litter him well, and keep him warm, for he will sweat excessively; give him only warm water with Wheat-bran therein; the next morning the like, and then suddenly after give him half a pint of white Wine, and two ounces and an half of Honey; then walk him as before. The third day in the morning, after he hath swallowed his aforesaid Drink, give him this Cordial, which you may make thus: Take three pints of strong Beer, somewhat stale, a good piece of Houshold-bread, and crum it therein, four ounces of Butter; put these into a skillett together, heat them not too much; taking them off, put in four ounces of Honey; stir them together well, and give it him, fasting, luke warm, then ride him a mile, afterwards set him up and let him be well littered. In the time of his Cure, ride him twice or thrice a day moderately, and it will add very much to the restitution of his former health.

Star in the Forehead; how to make one artificially.

I have heard of many a cunning Jockey that hath used this trick, either to add to the value of his Horse, or else, suspecting his Horse stoln, he used this project of making this artificial Star, so to disguise the Horse that the right owner should

should not know his own goods : thus, I have been informed, they make this Star: with a pair of Cissers they cut away first the hair from that place where they would have their artificial Star to appear ; then they take a piece of red Brick, and rub it on the bare place, rubbing it till it come to the roots of the hair ; then wiping it clean with a linnen rag, they make a Plaister of Burgundy-pitch, and spread it on a linnen cloth, so long and so wide as they intend the Star, laying on an hot Iron on the Pitch to soften it, ere they lay the plaister to the place intended : having laid on the first they apply a second larger than the former, letting them stick on till they fall off of their own accord, which may be five weeks first: now the craft lieth in making the hair grow white in the place of the former hair ; to effect which, they take some Butter, but more Honey, and having mingled them together, they anoint the Star once in three days, and for that distance five or six times ; having so done, in somewhat more than a quarter of a year, the Star desired will be visibly perspicuous. This some averr they have tried and have found it effectual, not only as to the forehead of the Horse, but they pretend also hereby to make such a mark on any other part of his body.

Tying of Horses on the Road, what to be done therein.

It is no novelty for Horses to tyre upon the Road, nay good Horses too, by reason of some new indisposition of body, his Master was not acquainted with. But let the causes of your Horse's tying be what they will, thus you ought

to do in such a case if you will behave your self like a prudent Traveller.

Do not force your Horse beyond his ability ; when you perceive him begin to tyre, but make what convenient speed you may to the next Inn, where let the Hostler rub him well down, cloath him and litter him up to the Belly, and in his rubbing him with fresh Straw let him observe to do it against the hair : then take a pint of sweet Sack or white Wine, and put thereto of Cinnamon, Ginger, Nutmegs, Grains, Cloves, Anniseeds and Fennel seeds of each one ounce, all made into fine powder ; then take red Sage, Rosemary-tops, Mints, Camomile and wild Thyme of each a like quantity, amounting in all to half an handful ; chop the Herbs very small and put them with the Spices into the Wine, boil these together a pretty while, then take it from the fire, strain it, and unbitting your Horse, give it him blood-warm to drink, then bit him again ; and two hours after you may give him some Hay ; but give him his Provender by little and little, and the next day you will find him in a very good posture to perform his journey.

Moreover, if your Horse be tyred, either by journeying or an Hunting-match ; it is an excellent help to him to give him Urine to drink a little warmed, and let him blood in the mouth, so that he may swallow some by chewing thereon ; if in your way you espy any Nettles, take an handful thereof, rub his Mouth and Sheath well therewith ; then gently ride him as he pleaseth to go himself till you come to the place where you intend to set him up : where

130 Causes, Signs and Cures

being arrived, cause him to be well rub'd down, and before you go to bed give him four spoonfuls of Brandy, stuffing his Rack well, with Provender in the Manger: the next morning rub his legs well with Sheeps feet oil, and you will admire how wonderfully it will refresh him.

Vomitings what and when to be given.

Vomits for Horses are of excellent use to cleanse the stomach, and are usually given to Horses newly taken up from Grass, being thereby much troubled with gross phlegmatick humours, offending both the head and stomach, and if not that way expelled & removed, will in a little time be very prejudicial to health; wherefore it will not be irrequisite to insert here a most approved and incomparable receipt for a vomit, which will infallibly throw out those peccant humours ingendred by that moist feeding. Take two Polypodium roots, the greatest you can get from the Oak; wash and scrape them very clean and tie them to his Snuffle or Bit; then let it be steeped in the Oil of Spike a whole night; in the morning fasting put on his Bridle with the said roots, and ride him with it in his mouth an hour and upwards moderately. If he be troubled with any Rheumatick humour, or filthy matter; this will force them to take vent at his Mouth and Nostrils, and by coughing and sneezing send forth abundance of filth, which did annoy the head and stomach, and by this means those slimy humours will be so exhausted, and his blood so refined and purified, that the Horse with well ordering will continue a long time health-

ful and serviceable: this is not only good for any Horse newly taken from Grass, but for any other Horse whose Head and Stomach is troubled with any foul and filthy humours.

Wind Cholick cured with a Clyster.

Take Penyroyal, and Pelitory of the Wall of each an handful, Mallows and Plantane of each an handful, of Cummin-seeds and Sassafrage-seeds of each one spoonful bruised, Camomile flowers one spoonful, and put these into a quart of thin posset-drink; boil them down to half thereof: take half a pint hereof and dissolve therein an ounce of *Electuarium de Baccis Lauri*, and give it him Clyster-wise.

Or boil one spoonful of Cummin seeds with a few Camomile-flowers in Posset-drink, and if to his Cholick he be also costive give him hereof to drink.

Wind-broken Horse.

Some are of the opinion, that a spoonful of the powder of an Hedge-hog put into Goats-milk, doth infinitely help a broken-winded Horse; but others are of opinion that this is much better: Take Boars dung and drie it to powder, and put a spoonful of it into two pints of Milk, as it comes from the Cow, or otherwise heat luke-warm, and give it him to drink; if that quantity make him not sick the first day, then give him double the proportion the next day, and so for five days together, and this will cure him.

Wind, how to preserve it in an Horse.

You would think it strange, but not so strange

132 Causes, Signs and Cures

as true, that an Hedg-hog should preserve the Wind of an Horse; the proof in your practice will convince you of your misbelief: for take one of them alive, and bake him in the Oven in an earthen pot close stopped, until he become so dry that you may reduce him into powder, give your Horse one spoonful of this powder in a quart of strong Ale every other day, and you will find the good effects hereof to your great satisfaction.

Or for the certain preservation of your Horses wind, you may make this Cataplasme. Take four pound of Wheat Flower, Enula-campana, and Gentian, of each one Ounce; Anniseeds, Fenugreek, Cummin, Brimstone and Liquorish, of each half a pound; reduce these into fine powder, and searce them well, to these adde of English Honey half a pound, and so much White-Wine as will make all these into a Cataplasme; then boyl them to that thicknes you may make Pills thereof, give of them four at a time, for seven or eight mornings together.

Thus far I have treated of the internal diseases of Horses, with their natures, signs, and cures, in an Alphabetical manner; but I find no inward distemper beginning with an X, Y, or Z; and therefore I could not finish the Alphabet; only I find a disease called the *Yellows*, but because it is the same with the Glanders, I shall forbear to insist thereon, as having discoursed it at large elsewhere.

It only now remains that I proceed to the Chirurgical part, that is, the cure of all outward Sorrances or Maladies which are incident to Horses,

ses, and visible to the Eye. As a necessary Introduction to this present design, I have spoken of the Anatomy of an Horse, whereby you may understand the names and contexture of every part and member belonging to an Horse; I shall now lay you down their Sorranes, with their Cures, in the same method I formerly took in the cure of an Horses internal diseases; but first take some general instructions.

CHAP. XXV.

Of External Hurts and Sorranes in general, with Caveats to be observed in their Cures, which are the best Rules or Præcognita, to be known by every one before he enters on the practice of Horse-Chirurgery.

YOU are to understand, that Sorranes are of two sorts; either an ill composition of body discernible, either by number, shape, quantity, &c. or else the division of an Unity, as when a bone is broken, and then it is called a *Fracture*, in the disunion of the flesh, it is called a wound, &c. Thus generally, now particularly.

1. When ever you intend to burn, or cauterize, or make incision, you must do it either above or below, where there are joynts, Veins, or Sinews.

2. No violent corrosive, as Arsnick, Sublimate,

mate, &c. must be applied to any finewy part or joynt.

3. It is not so good to make an incision as it is to cauterize.

4. You must not take above the fourth part of blood from a Colt which you do from an Horse grown to full maturity.

5. In all Tumours or Imposthumes, you must observe their rise, or beginning, increase, perfection and conclusion.

6. You must further observe as to those swellings, that if they be not near some principal part, you may use any thing that is repercussive in their beginnings; in their increase use medicines that may mollifie and ripen; when brought to suppuration, launch them, and let out the corruption; in their declination use exstensive, cleansing and healing Medicaments.

7. If an Horses legs be swelled, depress the part with your finger, if a dent or hole remain, you may conclude the hurt of long standing, and difficult to be cured; but, if removing your finger thence, it fill, and rise to its former height, then is it a new hurt, and easily remedied.

8. Burn or Cauterize sometimes under the Sore, to divert humours, sometimes above, to defend and withhold humours. By the way, you are to understand that Causticks and Corrosives are called potential burnings, actually to burn is with Instruments.

9. It is better and safer cauterizing with Copper than Iron, but Steel is next; shun that destructive custom of blowing powders into Hor-

ses Eyes, for it will ingender blindness; and do not take up any Veins in the fore feet, for that will cause stiffness and lameness.

10. Breath a Vein twice a year, that is, in the beginning of *May* and at the latter end of *December*; in *May*, because then the blood beginneth to encrease, and in *December*, to let out the gross and knotty blood occasioned by labour or ill keeping.

11. Let not your Stallions blood, for they expend enough in the covering of Mares; for some are of opinion that one Ounce of seed countervails five ounces of Blood.

12. Consider the time of the day for your blood-letting, and that must be in the morning fasting, but not very early; next consider his age; for if young and immature, it will hinder his growth; if old, his blood requireth rather to be repaired than wasted; lastly, look into his strength, for some can better spare three quarts than another one.

Now the signs to know when an Horse standeth in need to be let blood, are these.

1. His Eyes will look very red, and his Veins will stand swelling high more than ordinary.

2. He will be continually itching about his Tail, and be frequently rubbing it, and sometimes will shed some of his hair also.

3. He will now and then pill about the roots of his ears, or in that place where the Head-stall of the bridle lieth.

4. His Urine will be red and high-coloured, and his Dung will be black and hard; or if he

have red inflammations on his back, or if there be a yellowness in the whites of his eyes or inside of his Mouth; these are signs he would be let blood.

Lastly, when you see there is a necessity of taking blood from your Horse, for preventing future sickness, let him be sparingly dieted a day or two before, to the intent that his body may be undisturbed with digestion.

The manner how to let an Horse blood.

As near as you can let him stand on even ground, and if it be the Neck-Vein you intend to bleed, then take a small Cord, and throwing it over his head bring it down as close to the setting on of his shoulder as you can, then draw it very hard, and fasten it with a running knot; this will make the Veins appear as big as a mans little finger.

Observe that the place whereon you are to strike the Vein is within three or four fingers at the most of the neather chap.

When you have thus raised the Vein up, then with a wet Sponge or a little spittle wet that part of the Vein you mean to strike, and separating the hair, set your Fleime directly even upon the Vein, and with a smart blow strike it in, which done, cause one to put his finger into the Horses mouth, and tickling him on the roof thereof, make him chew and move his chap, for that will force the blood to spin forth; your Horse having bled sufficiently, unloose the Cord and the Vein will stop, then stroke down the Orifice and it will divert the course of the blood into its proper channel; after this turn him into the Stable, and there

there let him fast two hours, but after that feed him according as you please, that is to say, a sick Horse according to his distemper, and a sound Horse with Hay, Oats or Grasse.

When you bleed his Temple-Veins or Eye-Veins, you must then cord him about the middle of the neck; but have a care you do not throttle him: if in the Breast-Veins, then cord him behind the shoulders over-thwart his Withers.

Now know, it is not botchingly, but dangerous to strike any of these Veins in the head or breast with a Fleim; and therefore, if you will go to it like a Workman, breath those Veins with a sharp Lancet. As for all other Veins in an Horses body (when to be let blood) they are not to be corded but taken up: and the manner is thus.

First, cast your Horse upon some soft place, as a Dunghil, not too soft, or on good store of straw in some light place, then look for the Vein which you intend to take up; but if by reason of its smallness it is invisible, then take warm water, and therewith chafe and rub the place, bathing therein all that part wherein the Vein lieth; then take a narrow silk string, and an handful or two above the Vein (if it be of any of the Horses legs) tie the member very straight; but if it be on the body or breast, then with a good Sur-single either close behind the hinder point of the shoulder, or within an handful of the place where you intend to take up the Vein: gird him very straight, and presently you shall see the Vein to rise, then mark that part of the skin which covereth

vereth the Vein, and with your finger and your thumb, pull it somewhat aside from the Vein, and then with a very fine Incision knife slit the skin through without touching the Vein longwise, and not above an inch in length, cutting no deeper than the skin; that done, remove your finger and thumb, and the skin will return to its proper place, and through the slit you will perceive the Vein look blew before your eyes; then take a smooth Cronet made of the Brow-antler of a Stag, or of an old Buck, and thrust it underneath the Vein, and lift it up a pretty distance; that done, loose either the string or Surfingle, for they were only helps to discover the Vein.

The Vein being thus taken up on the Cronet, take a small piece of Shoemakers thred dipt in Oyl or Butter, and put underneath the Vein also, with which you shall knit the Vein when time requireth: then the Cronet standing as before, with your knife slit the Vein long wise a quarter of an inch, then with your thred stop the neather part of the Vein, suffering it to bleed above; then remove your thred above, knitting a knot above the slit, and so let it bleed beneath; having bled there sufficiently, fill up the Orifice of the Vein with Salt, and heal up the wound of the skin with Turpentine and Hogs grease molten together.

The benefit that redounds by this taking up of the Veins is manifold, for in general it easeth all griefs, strains and stiffness of the Limbs; but particularly, the taking up of the Plat-Veins easeth all pains in the breast, and griefs in the chest; the
taking

taking up of the Fore-thigh Veins helpeth Far-
cies and swellings of the Legs: the taking up of
the Shackle-Veins before easeth Gourding, Quit-
ter-bones, swelling of the joints, scabs, and
scratches: the taking up of the hinder hough
Veins helpeth Spavens of both kinds, especially
any Farcy in those parts, and generally all swell-
lings and Imposthumes: the taking up of the
Pattern Veins behind helpeth swellings about the
Cronet or neather joynts, pains, Mules, and all
manner of Kibed heels. Let thus much suffice
for a prefatory discourse or introduction; I
shall now follow my intended method, in giv-
ing you an Alphabetical account of those out-
ward Maladies which afflict Horses, with
their cures; and first, of the Disease called
the

Anbury.

The Anbury is a spongy over-grown Wart, full
of blood, having a root like a Cocks stone; it
may grow upon any part of the Horses body, but
principally it is discovered above the Eye-brows,
Nostrils or Privy parts.

If it be high, take an Horses hair and tye about
it very hard, making it fast, and in eight or nine
days it will so eat through it, as that it will drop
off; but if it be flat you must burn it off with an
hot Iron, leaving none of the root behind, and
dry it up with the powder of Verdigrease; with
this proviso, it lye not too near any sinew; if so,
eat out the Core with Mercury; then stop the
hole with Flax dipt in the white of an Egge,
and dry it up with unslaked Lime and Honey.

Accloy.

Accloying is no more than what we commonly call pricking with a Nail in the shoeing, and hereupon will halt ; if you find the cause thereof to be a prick, then take out the sole, and cut the hoof round about the place pricked ; and having removed the corruption, take Hurds steeped in the whites of Egges, and fill up the hole ; do thus four days, and after that, heal up the sore with Salt made into fine powder, mingled with Vinegar, and anoint the out-side of the hoof with black *Ægyptiacum* : or this is as good a remedy as the former, take Sallet-Oyl, Turpentine, and Rosin-pitch, all molten together, put it very hot into the hole where he is pricked, and then stop the hole with hurds.

Avives.

Avives is a Distemper otherwise called *Vives* or *Fives* ; they are certain flat Kernels, in likeness to a bunch of Grapes growing in a cluster ; they creep down from the Ears towards the Throat, which when they are inflamed will swell, which swelling as it is very painful, so it will prove mortal, if not timely prevented ; for by stopping his wind it will soon suffocate him.

The common causes of this Distemper are over-heatings, or extraordinary rankness of blood.

In the Cure you must cautiously observe, not to touch the Kernels with your fingers ; but having cut the skin long-ways so that the Kernels lye open, take an instrument like a pair of Pliers, and pinch forth the Kernels, and so apply thereunto hurds steeped in the whites of Egges
well

well beaten and bound thereon; renew this daily seven or eight times and it will cure it. This is Mr. Greys way of curing the Avives. The common way of curing it, is to draw down the sore with an hot Iron just in the midst so far as the swelling goeth, and then under the Ear draw two other stroaks of the fashion of an Arrows head; then open the skin and with a small pair of Plyers pull out the Kernels and cut them off, but have a care you injure not the Veins; that done, fill the place with Bay-salt made into fine powder, and after that heal up the sore with a green Ointment.

The cure of latestt practice is to let him blood on both sides of the Neck; then clap a pair of Barnacles on his nose, and take a red hot Iron, with the Edge as thick as the back of a Knife, and with it make a strike from the root of the Ears upon the middle of the swelling downwards to the lowest part of the swelling, then burn it till the skin be yellow; being thus seared, anoint the swelling with a little butter or Hogs-grease; according as the searing is less or more deep, anoint him seldomer or oftner, but four or five times is sufficient.

But the most approved Medicine for this Malady which will cure it without burning, or any such violent means is: take a penny worth of Pepper beaten to fine powder, Swines grease a spoonful, the juice of an handful of Rue, and of Vinegar two spoonfuls, mix these well together, and convey it equally into both the Ears of the Horse, then shake the Ears that the Medicine may sink downwards, and after that tye them up;
when

when you have done this let him blood in the Neck-Vein and Temple-Vein.

Arraists or Rat-tails.

This Distemper proceedeth from too much rest, or from being not well rubbed about the heels, for by this over much ease and pampering the blood corrupting in his body falleth down into his hinder legs, and is much more venemous and malignant than the Scratches.

The Cure must be wrought by taking half a pound of green Vitriol, and boyl it in a pottle of running Water with Allom, Mustard, Sage and Hysope, of each an handful. The night before you apply this, anoint the sores with strong Mustard after they are made raw, then the next day wash them with the Water aforesaid, made of Vitriol, &c. and you need not doubt the Cure.

But the most approved remedy I can find for this Malady is to let the Horse be ridden till he be warm, whereby the Veins will be more apparent: then let him blood in the Fetlock-Veins on both sides, suffering him to bleed a good quantity; then the next day wash the sores, with warm Water, clipping away all the hair about the sores, and after this anoint them with an Oyntment made after this manner: take green Coperas and Verdigrease, of each two Ounces, and of common Honey four Ounces; beat the Coperas and Verdigrease very small, and work them up with your Honey to a perfect Unguent, and herewith daily anoint the sores till they be well.

Attaint upper and neather, and in the beel.

The upper Attaint is a painful swelling of the
Back.

Back-sinew of the Shank-bone, occasioned by over-reaching, and striking that Sinew with the Toe of his hinder-foot, making him halt down-right.

The signs are apparent, and the cure not very difficult; to the perfecting whereof, take a Plaister made of Wine-lees and Wheat-flower laid hot thereon; or else take of Black Soap and Boars-grease of each a like quantity, scalding hot, and make thereof a Plaister of Sear-cloth, and clap it over the sore place.

Others will only take a live Pigeon, and cut him in two, and clap it to the sore, which they affirm will speedily abate the swelling.

Others again take of Frankincense, of Rozin, of Tar, of Euphorbium, of Turpentine and Fennugreek of each a quarter of an ounce, of Suet one ounce, of Oyl an ounce, of Wax three ounces, and three quarters of an ounce of Myrrh; melt and mix them altogether, and Plaister-wise lay it to the place grieved till it be whole.

The neather Attaint or over-reach, on the midst and in the hollow of the Pastern joint, is a little Bladder full of jelly, like to a wind-gall; this is not very apparent to the eye, but may easily be felt, and will make an Horse halt exceedingly.

Cure this malady thus: take a small Cord and rowl him somewhat strait, from the Knee to the neather joint; and then in the Pastern, between the Hoof and the joynt, with a Fleim strike him in the midst of the Swelling, and so let out the corruption; then take the white of an Egg, and beat it with a little Salt, and then dipping

dipping Flax therein lay it unto the swelling; then unrowl his leg, and renew this Salve twice a day, till it be fully cured.

There is yet another Attaint or over-reach, and that is upon the Heel, caused by an Horses striking the Toe of his hinder shoe into the Heel, just upon the setting on of the Hoof: this, if not timely looked after, will indanger the loss of the Hoof.

If you intend to cure him, you must cut away hair, skin, hoof and flesh, till without hollownes you have made the sore eaven; then take Beer and Salt, and therewith wash it well; then take Flax, dipt in the white of an Egg, mingled with a little Bole-armoniack and bind it to the sore; renew this once a day for four or five days, and the cure will be effected.

Burning with Shot, or otherwise.

If your Horse be shot, after you have drawn the Bullet, take Varnish and Water, and beat them well together; then pour away the water from the varnish, and with a feather anoint the place burned.

This following Ointment is good for any burning what-ever: Take a stone of Quick lime, well burned (which you shall understand by the lightness thereof) and dissolve it in fair water, when the Lime is settled to the bottom, strain the clearest of this water through a fine linnen cloth; then add thereunto as much Oil of Hemp-seed as there is water; beat these well together, and you will have a most pretious Ointment for all burning whatsoever

Brittle-hoof.

This proceedeth from two several causes, first
naturally

naturally or hereditary, when the Mare or Stallion was troubled with the like infirmity; or secondly, accidentally, by reason of a Surfeit that fell down into the feet, which caused a dryness in the hoofs, or else by some former founder or heating in his feet.

The Cure must be in this manner: after with a Rape or Drawing-iron you have thinned the Coffin of his hoof, and have pared his Soles finely, then apply to the Coffin and Soles this following charge.

Take Rie or Wheat-bran, Oxen or Cows-dung an indifferent quantity; then take sheeps-suet, and Hogs-grease tried, Tar and Turpentine of each half a pound; let the Sheeps-suet be minced very small, and melt it on the fire; add thereunto some Hogs grease, and when they are melted, put in your Ox or Cows-dung, stirring them well together; then gradually put in your bran, continually stirring them; lastly, put in your Tarr and Turpentine; when you have so incorporated these together, as that they are become like a paste; then take it from the fire, and preserve it for your use. With this dress him every day for twenty days, or more, together, not letting him touch water with his feet, and his hoofs will be restored to their former toughness and firmness.

Bone-spaven.

This Bone or Dry Spaven is as big as a Wall-nut, growing under the inside of the hoof, hard under the joint, near to the Matter-vein: it is but tender at first, but if it be neglected, it will be an hard Crust, nay as hard as any bone, and

sticketh to the Bone as close as the bark of an Oak to the body, and causeth lameness in the Horse.

The Cure is very hard and difficult, however I will prescribe you the best remedies I can procure. In the first place, take *Unguentum Apostolorum* and of *white Mercury* of each a like quantity, mix them well together, and after you have cast your Horse, make a slit, the length of the Spaven, but be careful you touch not the Master-vein; having opened it, and laid the Spaven bare with a sharp instrument, scale the Spaven a little; then make a plegant of lint as big as the Spaven; then spreading Salve thereon, lay it upon the Spaven; then with dry lint defend all other parts, especially the Master-vein, from the Corrosive; then lay a Plaister of Pitch, Rozen, Turpentine and Hogs-grease round about his hoof, and so let him rest four and twenty hours; then open it again, and if you find the Corrosive hath not eaten enough, apply a fresh one, and that will be enough, and then take of Turpentine, of Deers-suet and of Wax of each a like quantity; melt and mix these well together, and being warmed dress therewith the fore place; in four days time you shall find the Spaven come clear away, and then with the same Salve heal up the wound.

You may also apply to the Sorrance, after the aforesaid Corrosives, a Plaister of strong Ægyptiacum, till it hath fretted off the flesh upon the Crust, so bare as possibly may be, and so you may the better attempt the taking away of the said Crust, or by rubbing it with a Rolling-pin,
anointed

anointed with *Petroleum*, till the Crust be converted into a softer substance, or into such thin corruption as may be easily drawn away.

Now if you find a swelling in the Spaven place, to prevent it from running into a Spaven; shave away the hair about the swelling; then take natural Balsam and anoint the place therewith two or three days; then repress the humours, by taking three ounces of the Oil of Roses, Bole-armoniack one ounce, Wheat-flower half an ounce, and the white of one Egg; make all these into a body, and having first anointed the part with Balsam every day, lay on this charge.

Back-smankt, or for a strain in the Kidneys.

Take a skin, just as it comes from the back of the sheep, both hot and fat; then take a Groats worth of Turpentine, and as much of Nerve-oil, and mingling them together anoint the inside of the sheep-skin all over, and clap it on the back of the Horse, where the grief lies, which commonly is in the Navil place of the backbone; having thus laid it on, make a Crupper to goe under his tail to keep it on, and a breast-plate before, and fasten them together: thus let it lie upon him for a month till his back be knit and strengthened.

Burning of an Horse by a Mare.

This frequently happens, by the great heat and foulness of a Mare, and may be called the Horse-pox; which is known by mattering of the Yard within.

For its cure, take a pint of white Wine, boil in it a quartern of Roch-Alom; when boiled

and cold, take thereof, and with a Syringe squirt it into his Yard, as far as you may, and in a short time he will prove very sound.

Button-Farcy.

This Malady proceeds from great heats, and Corruption of blood, whose Symptoms are apparently visible; for the Horse will be all over full of Bunches and Knots, some little as Pease, others big as Nuts.

For the cure of this Sorrhance, you must bleed him well on both sides of his Neck; then take Housleek, beat it and strain it through a fine linnen cloth, and put it into his ears; then take an ounce of Aristolochia, and grate it small, the tops of Rew, one handful, the quantity of an Egg of Hogs-grease; beat these three last till they be like a Salve. As soon as you have put in the Housleek into each ear alike, divide the other in two parts, and equally distribute it into each Ear, putting some Wool after it to keep it in; then stitch up his Ears, that he may not shake it out; then with the point of your Penknife make a little hole in his forehead, and after that, with your Cornet-horn raise the skin from his forehead, the breadth of your hand; then take a red Dock-root, and cut it into three pieces, and put them into the hole, which will draw out abundance of corruption, which corruption will scald the hair off; when the vertue or strength of the root is vanisht, it will drop out of its own accord: then anoint the place with a little fresh Butter; then lay a plaister of Burgundy-pitch over it to keep out the wind and the cold;
after

after this let him stand on the Trench seven hours, in which time you shall observe him to flaver, champ and foam, as if he were ridden. At night give him warm water and Bran; what you convey'd into his Ears, let it remain two days; then take it out, and in a little time his knots and bunches will disappear, and his hair come again on his forehead.

Bunches of all sorts, Knots, Warts and Wens, how infallibly to take away in a short space.

Such Maladies or Sorrances have commonly their original from rankness of bad blood, which is engendred of malignant humours, and those peccant humours from naughty Diet.

The way to cure them is thus: first, shave away the hair about them; then take up those veins which you imagine give these Sorrances sustenance; then let him bleed in the heels, to draw away the humours downwards; then wash and bathe him very well with hot Vinegar; then take a quart of the Oil of Nuts, and Verdigrise powdered two ounces, and a quarter of a pint of Ink; mix all these well together, and apply it cold to the places afflicted, rubbing them well therewith; if at the first doing these excrescences do not dry up, then continue in so doing every fourth day till they disappear.

Another way is this: Take Vinegar and Mutton suet, the Gum of the Pine-tree, new Wax and Rozin of each a like quantity; melt these together, putting in your Gum last, and so anoint the Sorrances with a feather every day till they be whole; but omit not the taking up of such Veins as you verily believe do foment and give

150 The Cures of External

nutriment to those Sorrances, with shaving away the hair, &c.

Back-swelling, a speedy and easie Cure.

If by any casualty whatsoever, the back of your Horse be swelled, presently take a little flax, the whites of Eggs and Wheat-flower; and having beaten them well together; lay it to the place aggrieved, and it will quickly remove the swelling.

Blood-spaven.

Of the Bone-Spaven we have already treated; we now come to speak of the Blood or Bog-spaven; it is also called the Wet or Through-spaven, which is much more easie to be cured than the former.

This Malady groweth on the Hough, with a swelling full of blood, which the Master-vein continually supplieth it with; this great Vein runneth along the inside of the Thigh, and so cometh along the inside of the Hough, and so down the leg to the Pastern, and from thence to the bottom of the foot; this causeth the swelling to be greatest in the inside, although it be apparent enough in the outside.

Now the blood being, through over much heating, too much stirred, it engendreth a fluxible humour, which being very thin, runs downwards towards its Centre; but it is stopped in its passage in the Hough, where it resideth, and by that means swelleth, and so becomes a Sorrance called the Blood-spaven.

For the Cure the most expert follow this course; after they have shaved off the hair and taken up the vein, they then take Mustard-seed, great Mallow.

Mallow-roots, and of Ox-dung a like quantity, and as much strong Vinegar as will mix them together like a Salve; then beating them well together, make thereof a soft Plaister, and lay it on the Spaven, let it morning and evening be changed, taking care that it be so bound on as not easily to come off; when the Spaven is absolutely removed, then lay on that place a Plaister of Pitch very hot, and take it not off, but let it fall off of its self.

But certainly the best remedy that can be applied to the blood-spaven is; having taken up the Vein (letting it bleed as long as it will) take two or three handfuls of Linseed, and bruise it well in a Mortar, then take new Cows-dung and mingle with it; then put it into a Frying-pan, and heat it well on the fire, and so very hot apply it to the Spaven, renewing it twice a day, till it bring the Spaven into the nature of a Boil or Impostumation, and then break it; after it hath run two days, only lay on a Plaister of Pitch, which you must not remove till it fall off of its own accord.

Barbs or Papps underneath an Horses Tongue.

These Barbs or Paps, which grow in an Horses Mouth underneath the Tongue, are no ways detrimental to him (as growing there in all Horses naturally) till they become inflamed, extending themselves, and swelling with corrupt blood, proceeding from naughty humours, and frequently these Paps will become raw, and then they will be so troublesome that the Horse will not be able to feed without a great deal of pain and anguish.

All Farriers agree in one particular Cure, though there is an other, but with little alteration: the first is, absolutely to clip them away with a pair of Sheers close to the Jaw, and then to wash the Sore, either with water and Salt, or else with Tartar and strong Vinegar mixt together.

Or else, take a pair of Cissers, and clip them away (which will appear under his Tongue like two Paps) then prick him in the Palate of his mouth with your Fleim, that he may bleed the better; then wash the places with white Wine Vinegar, Bole-armoniack and Bay-salt, as much as will suffice, and for four days after see that no Hay-dust stick upon the places so clipped, and the Cure will be effected.

Belly-Gaunt how remedied.

Though I here prescribe a Cure for an Horse Belly-Gaunt, yet my advice shall be, not to keep any such Horse, but dispose of him with what convenient speed you may; for he will never thrive well, being washy and very tender; and if he come once to labour hard, he will be always diseased and unhealthy.

However, if you perceive your Horse to have his Belly shrunk up towards his flanks, becoming as Gaunt as a running Horse that is Dieted for a course; then conclude he is very costive, and is afflicted with much unnatural heat in his body.

In order to his Cure, you are to understand that every Horse hath about his Cods two small strings, which extend from his Cods to the bottom of his Belly, viz. on each side one; which

which strings you must endeavour to break with your fingers, which is not difficult to do; then anoint that place every day with fresh Butter and *Unguentum Populeon* mixed together; this in a little time will make him Belly-well.

Botches in the Groin.

Botches in Horses do commonly proceed (especially if they are gross and full of humours) from sudden and violent labour, which will force those humours into the weakest parts, and there engender a Botch, most commonly in the hinder parts, near the Cods, betwixt the Thighs.

As soon as you shall perceive this swelling (which you shall find, if you will feel it, hard and round;) mollifie or ripen it with a Plaister made of Wheat-flower, of Turpentine and of Honey of each a like quantity, stirring it together to make a stiff Plaister, and so lay it on the swelling; renew it every day till it break or wax soft; if it break not, Lance it, and cleanse it from its corruption; then tent it with Turpentine and Hogs-grease, renewing it once a day, till you have cicatrized the orifice.

To conclude; take this one more, which is a most certain and approved Cure for the Botch in the Groins, or for any Impostumation.

As soon as the Swelling appears, lay upon it a Plaister of Shoe-makers Wax, spread upon A-lom Leather, and let it lie till the sore grow soft: then open it with a Lancet, or let it break of its own accord; when the filth hath issued forth,

forth, wash the sore very well with strong Alom-water; then tent it with an Ointment called *Ægyptiacum* till it be well and sound.

Canker in the Mouth.

The Ingredients which make up a Canker in the Mouth, are a many sore Blisters, rawness of Mouth and Tongue, with a sharp hot humour proceeding from thence, which frets and corrodes, nay rots the flesh where-ever it passeth.

The Original of this disease is commonly some unnatural heat arising from the stomach; sometimes the Venom of filthy food is the cause thereof.

Some prescribe this as an excellent Remedy: Take of the juice of Daffadil-roots seven drachms, of the juice of Hounds-tongue as much, of Vinegar the like quantity, of Alom one ounce; mingle these well together, and wash the Canker once a day herewith till it be well.

Others use this remedy: Take half a pint of the best white Wine-vinegar, and half a pound of the best Roch Alom, and an handful of red Sage, and boil them all together, and therewith wash the Horses mouth and tongue.

If the Canker be in the Tongue only, then take of Roch-Alom the quantity of an Egg; boil it in four or five Spoonfuls of white Wine-vinegar, with a spoonful of English Honey, and an handful of Columbine-leaves cut small, and therewith wash his Tongue once a day, and it will be quickly whole.

But the best of all remedies comes at last: Take of Ginger and Alom of each a like quantity, finely pulverized;

pulverized ; then with strong Vinegar so mingle them that they be as thick as a Salve ; then with Alom-water or Vinegar wash the Canker clean, and then anoint it with this Salve, which in twice or thrice doing will kill the Canker, and after heal of it self.

*R. Verjuice Bloudwarm a Pint,
Strong Mustard a Spoonfull,
Canker in the Head. Roeh Alum 2 Spoonfull.*

This Canker frequently seizeth the eyes, and sometimes the Nostrils, causing those parts it invadeth, to be raw and running with yellow water.

For the Cure, take half a pint of Sallet-oil, one ounce of the Oil of Turpentine, three ounces of Burgundy-pitch, and one penyworth of Verdigrise beaten fine ; put all but the Verdigrise in a Pipkin together, and let them boil a pretty while, then remove it from the fire, and put in the Verdigrise, and let them all boil together to a Salve ; but have a care the Verdigrise make not all run over into the fire.

Be sure you stir it all the while it boils, and having boiled sufficiently, take it off and set it by for your use.

When you would make use of this for a Canker in the Nostrils ; first, tie a rag about a sticks end, and dip it in some white Wine-vinegar and Salt, and run it up his Nostrils to mundifie and cleanse them ; then take a feather and dip in the cold Salve, and run it up his Nostrils also, not oftener than once a day.

If the Canker be in the Horses eyes or face, with Tow rub the part till it bleed, and when it hath done bleeding, anoint it with a feather dipt in the aforesaid Salve ; dress it once a day constantly,

stantly till you see it beginneth to heal, after that, once in three or four days will serve turn.

Cords or Strings in Horses.

There are two strings like threads, which are therefore called Cords, because, lying betwixt the knee and the body, it goeth like a small cord through the body to the Nostrils; making an Horse to stumble much, and sometimes to fall.

It proceeds commonly from an extream cold which lodgeth in the stomach, which causeth the Cords to shrink up in so great a measure, that sometimes he can neither lift his head to the rack nor put his head to the ground, nay, not so much as to his knees.

The only signs of this Malady are his often stumblings and stiffness without any visible Sor-rance.

To cure him you must take the end of a crooked Harts horn that is sharp, put it under the Cords, and twine it a dozen times about, till the Horse be constrained to lift up his foot, then cut the cord asunder, and put a little Salt into the issue; or cut it first at the Knee, then at the end of his Nose, and so draw it upwards a span length, and cut that off. Others only open that Vein that descendeth on the inside of the leg by the breast, taking away at least a pottle of blood; and after seven days wash him with Beef broth; and they say it is a speedy cure.

But the newest way of curing this Distemper, is first to make him this comfortable Drink: take half an Ounce of Diapente, one Ounce of Anniseeds beaten small, three penny worth of
English

English Saffron, dry it by the fire, and crumble it small with your fingers, two Ounces of Honey, two Ounces of fresh Butter, a pint and an half of strong Beer, a quarter of a pint of White-Wine-Vinegar; set these over the fire till the Butter and Honey be melted, and no longer; then take it off and give it the Horse luke-warm fasting, then walk him till he be warm, and then set him up; five hours after give him a little Hay, and then a Mash, the next morning another Mash, and thus keep him five days; then cut the cord as you were instructed before; and then walk him twice a day for a week together, and the Horse will prove as sound as ever.

Curb.

A Curb is a long swelling a little below the Elbow of the hoof of the great line behind, hard above the top of the horn, which causeth the Horse to halt after any exercise: labour puts him to a world of pain, but rest very much easeth his grief; sometimes this Distemper comes hereditary from the Stallion or Mare, but more frequently it comes by carrying great burthens when he was young, or by some strain by leaping &c.

The remedy for it is to take a broad Inle to bind the hoof strait a little above the Curb, then with a smooth hazel stick beat, rub, and chafe the Curb, then thrust out the corrupt blood, and afterwards upon the point of your knife put into every hole as deep as you can thrust it the quantity of two Barley corns of white Mercury, and so let the Horse rest for four and twenty hours; after that only anoint the sore place with

with hot melted butter once a day at least till it be whole.

Or you may use this Medecine : take Wine-Lees one pint, a porringer full of Wheat-flower, of Cumin in fine powder half an Ounce, mix these well together, and being made warm, apply it to the place, renewing it once a day five days together ; when you perceive the swelling so much abated that it is almost gone, then draw it with your hot Iron, and charge the burning with Pitch and Rozen molten together, and applied warm that it may the beter stick on, then clap on Flocks, and let it remain till it drop off of it self.

Here note, that whatever is good for a Splent or Spaven is good for a Curb also.

Crest falln and shedding of the hair.

The falling of the Crest, manginess in the Main and shedding of the hair are all diseases proceeding from poverty or over riding.

The best cure for the falling of the Crest is, phlebotomy with good keeping ; for it is strength and fatness that must raise the Crest. If the Main be mangy anoint it with Butter and Brimstone : if the hair fall away, take Southern-wood and burn it to Ashes, and mix these Ashes with Sallet-Oyl, and anoint the defective place therewith, and it will speedily produce hair, which shall be both fair, smooth and thick.

Casting the hoof.

This is a Sorrance that is both troublesome and somewhat difficult to be cured ; it proceedeth from several causes, as Foundring, Accloying, Pricking, Gravelling, or by a Stub, or Quitter-bone

bone, which breaking out above round about the cronet, the hoof soon breaketh, and falleth from the foot,

The hoof thus saln off, or being broken or loose, with a Rape or Drawing Iron file or draw away the old hoof somewhat near, then anoint the foot with this Ointment : take Hogs-grease three pound, Pach-grease two pound, Venice-Turpentine one pound, new Wax half a pound, Sallet-Oyl one quart, mix these together by melting them over the fire, and herewith chafe, rub and anoint the Coffin of the hoof up to the very top, and this will quickly produce a new hoof.

Now as your new hoof cometh on, you must heedfully take notice whether it groweth harder or thicker, more in one place than another, or whether it groweth disorderly ; where you find the fault rectifie it presently with your Rape, and so reduce your hoof to good fashion.

If your Horse be hoof-bound this following receipt is most soveraign for it : take half a pound of Turpentine, half a pint of Tar, half a pound of new Wax, one pint of Sallet-Oyl, mix all these, besides the Turpentine, together, and a little before you take them from the fire put in your Turpentine (for should you put it in with the rest before they would be melted, the Turpentine being a Drug so subtil would consume to vapour) I say, having put in your Turpentine, stir it till it be cold ; but before hand make a Buskin of Leather with a thick sole made fit for his hoof, and wide enough that it may be tyed about his Pastern, and dress his hoof with this Medicine,

renewing it every day till it be whole, not forgetting to lay Tow or hurds on the hoof.

Crown-Scab.

This forrance is a Scab which groweth on the Cronet or top of the hoof next to the hair; it is a cancerous and stinking Malady, very troublesome and painful to the poor creature; it happens usually in the Winter whilst in the Stable, proceeding principally from his first feeding in moist and cold grounds; all Horses so bred up are subject to this distemper, and to the scratches also.

The only sign hereof is that the hair will stare about the Cronet, and become thin and brisly.

In the Cure hereof you must wash very well and bathe the scab as far as it goeth; and having clipt away the hair, then take Turpentine, tryed Hogs-grease, and Honey, of each a like quantity, a little powder of Bole-Armoniack, the yolks of two Egges, with as much Wheat-flower as will thicken it to a Salve, and apply this Plasterwise, with a linnen cloth, to the Sorrance, renewing it once every day till it be whole.

Or you may try this, which is as good as the former: take soft Sope, tryed Hogs grease, of each half a pound, and a *quantum sufficit* of Bole-Armoniack powdered, Turpentine four Ounces, make all these into a body, and apply it to the place Plasterwise in such manner, that it may not easily fall off, renewing it dayly till it leave running; then wash and bathe it with warm Vinegar.

Camery.

The Camery which is also called the Frounce,
are

are small pimples in the midst of the Palate, being both soft and sore; they are sometimes to be seen in the lips and tongue; some are of opinion that they are occasioned by eating of frozen grass, or by drawing frozen dust with grass into their mouths; others think they come by eating moist Hay, on which Vermin have pish.

The Cure is, first, to let him blood in the two greatest Veins under his tongue, and then wash all the pimples with Vinegar and Salt, then give him some new bread, but let it not be hot, but let the quantity of bread you give him be but small to prevent surfeit.

Lastly, others use to take out his tongue, and prick the Veins thereof in half a score places, as also under his upper lip, then rub well every sore place with salt, and the next day wash them with warm White-Wine, and refraining him three days from cold drink he will be restored to his pristine soundness.

Croket hurt any ways, a Cure therefore.

Take Salt and Sope, of each a like quantity, and mix them together like a Paste; then having cut out the over-reach, and laid it plain, first, wash it with Urine and Salt, and with a cloth dry it, then bind on the mixt Sope and Salt, not renewing it in twenty four hours; thus do three days together; the venom being drawn forth, take a spoonful of Train-Oyl, and as much white Lead, and mix it to a thick Salve, lay on a plaister hereof morning and evening till it be whole, which will speedily be effected.

Canker in the Withers.

A Canker in the Withers often happens thus:

M

the

the Withers of an Horse having been violently wrung, and afterwards for some time neglected, through which means the violence of the Distemper breaketh upward; yet most of the matter or corruption discending, and rotting still downwards, it will suddainly prove a cankerous and foul Ulcer, and as full of danger as any Fistula what-ever.

The signs are very evident, for the humour which issueth from the sore will be sharp, hot, and waterish, corroding or fretting away the hair wherever it comes, and the hole of the sore will be somewhat choaked with a kind of spongy dead flesh, so that the gross matter will be somewhat obstructed in its passage.

The ancient Cure hereof was to take a keen Razor; and cut open the hole of the Ulcer, so that you may look into the cavity or profundity thereof; and having cut out all the dead flesh from the quick, then take a quart of stale Urine, and add thereunto some Salt: then boyl it well, and having first cleansed the sore very well with a wisp of Hay, then wash it with the Urine and Salt boiled together: then take the yolks of four Egges and a penny worth of Verdigrease, with a spoonful of flower, and make a Plaister thereof, applying it to the sore, renewing it once a day till it be whole.

Casting of an Horse, how to do it.

In the first place you must elect a convenient place, such as is some soft green Swarth, Dung-hil not over moist, or in a Barn upon good store of straw; and having brought him to any of these places, then take a double long rope, and
cast

cast a knot a yard from the bought, then put the bought about his Neck, and the double rope betwixt his fore Legs, and about his hinder Pasterns underneath his Fetlock, then put the ends of the rope under the bought of his Neck, and draw them quick and they will overthrow him, then fasten the ends, and hold down his head, under which lay good store of straw.

Now if at any time you would brand your Horse in the buttock, or do any thing about his hinder legs, take up his contrary fore-leg, and that will secure you from his striking.

Defence for Horses against Flies in the heat of Summer.

Your Horse-fly especially, but there are other offensive Flies in heat of Summer, which are a great trouble and perplexity to Horses, stinging them in such manner, that they will run themselves off their legs, thinking to free themselves that way: to prevent the biting of these Flies when he is at grass, anoint his body all over with Oyl and Bayberries mingled together; if in the stable, take a Sponge dipped in strong Vinegar, and bind it unto the head-stall of his Collar. These are very good preservatives, but there is nothing better, both when he is abroad and at home, than to take Rue, and make it into a pretty big wisp, and therewith rub the Horses body all over, then take another wisp of the same, and do the like, till you think you have imbittered his coat sufficiently; and then your own experience will find no fly will fasten upon him; this hath been always tryed effectually.

Drying up of Humours.

If you would dry up, stop, or stay any flux of humours: take Rozen, Assalto, and Myrrh, of each an Ounce, and dissolve them in Vinegar; of red Wax half an Ounce, and of Armoniack half an Ounce, mingle them well together in the boyling, and make thereof a Salve, which you will find to be a great dryer, a binder of loose members, and a comforter of weak parts.

Or you may take Oyl or soft Grease beaten to a Salve, with Vitriol, Galls and Allom, the powder of Pomegranats, Salt and Vinegar; this dries and binds sufficiently.

There are many forms of drying and binding which are published in all books of this nature, wherefore referring you thither I shall only instance this one more, and that is the Bark of a Willow Tree burnt to Ashes, which I can assure you is as great a binder and dryer as any simple whatsoever.

Dangerous Sicknes, and how it cometh.

This dangerous sickness in general proceedeth from many and particular causes, having each of them peculiar signs, and therefore must have distinct remedies.

The causes may be ranked under these four heads: first, dangerous Maladies may proceed from heats occasioned by over much labour or exercise; hence comes molten Grease, the heart over-charged, and its pores so obstructed, that it cannot perform his function; by which means the spirits are detrimented, and the whole body put out of order; and the signs hereof will be dulness of countenance, swelling in his limbs, scouring,

scouring, and loathing of his meat. The second original cause of dangerous sickness, are Colds from indiscreet keeping after violent exercise, or otherwise, and the symptoms of this are heaviness of countenance, with sleepiness, Pustuls, inflamed Kernels and swellings, a rotten inward Cough, after which he cheweth some filthy phlegmatick matter between his teeth.

The third cause of dangerous sickness is surfeit by food, either by over eating or under eating of that which is good, or eating of what is unwholesome: by the first all ill humours ascend into the head, from which are bred the Stavers, Phrenzies, with other deadly diseases. From the second proceeds the putrefaction of the blood, converting all the nutriment into corruption; hence come the Yellows, Farcy, Feavers, Mange, with other such like pestilential and loathsome Distempers. The signs hereof are a dulness of the face and eyes, in such sort as the Horse will be unable to lift up his head as high as the Manger, his upper lip and sheath cold, his pace staggering, &c.

Lastly, dangerous sickness may come accidentally, as by receiving some desperate wound or hurt in some vital part, whereupon, nature being highly offended gives leave to many mortal diseases to seize the body of an Horse. The general signs hereof are sweatings at the roots of the Ears, in the Flanks, and behind the shoulders, his mouth will be dry and hot, his tongue furred, and lastly, he will have a loathing to his meat,

Dangerous sickness how to cure.

The best way to cure dangerous sickness is to meet with it in the Bud, before it hath got too great an head, but send it packing before it be deeply rooted in an Horses body, and to this end you must have a strict eye over your Horse, frequently prying into his present condition : if you see by any symptom the least appearance of an approaching sickness, instantly breath a Vein, and three or four mornings together give him some Diapente to drink, keeping him warm, and well rubb'd, giving him warm mashes during that time and some days after ; but if you have not Diapente or Diatesaron, then take an handful of Celandine, both roots and leaves well picked and washed, Worm-wood and Rue, of each an handful, boyl all these in a pottle of strong Ale to a quart, then strain it well, and take half a pound of sweet Butter, and put into the liquor, with two spoonfuls of ordinary Treacle, and so give it him blood warm, and this will restore him to his former health, and sound estate of body.

Drawing of a Stub or Thorn.

If a Stub, Thorn, Iron, Splinter, Nail, or any other sharp thing run into your Horses foot so far that you cannot pull it out with your fingers or a pair of Plyers, then take black sope, and lay it to the foot of your Horse all night, and by the morning the sope will so draw it forth as that you may lay hold on it with your instrument: but sometimes a thorn or nail will enter so far into the flesh that the Sope will prove ineffectual as to its extraction, then by incision you must lay the flesh open, so that you may come to use your
 Plyers

Plyers, in the drawing out what to the foot is so offensive ; having so done, heal up the wound with this most excellent green Ointment, which for the rarity I shall here insert the right way of making it.

*Take a clean Skillet, and first put therein of Ro-
zin the quantity of a Walnut, which being molten,
add thereunto thelike quantity of Wax ; and when
that also is molten, put to them of tried Hogs-grease
half a pound ; and that being melted, put to the rest
one Spoonful of common English Honey ; when all these
are molten and well stirred together, then put in half
a pound of ordinary Turpentine, and so soon as
it is dissolved, take it from the fire, and put into
the Skillet of Verdegrise made into fine powder one
ounce, then stir it all together, but have a care it run
not over ; then set it again on the fire, till it be-
gin to simmer ; then straining it, keep it for your
use.*

This Ointment cleanseth a wound, be it never so foul, or troubled with dead or proud flesh ; it healeth wonderfully sores either old or green, Ulcers, Fittula's, Polevils and the like ; an Horse or Mare-Filly, that is cut, guelt or splaid, anoint but the place, and it will neither swell nor fester. Lastly, and for this purpose, I here place this Green Ointment ; it will, after a wonderful manner, draw forth Thorns, Splinters and Nails which have taken deep rooting in the flesh.

Dislocation of Joints.

If any joint be dislocated, it must be first reduced to its proper place, and being sure thereof, bind it up with this Plaister : Take Wheat-

bran and Hogs-grease, of each an indifferent quantity; incorporate them, and make thereof a Plaister of Hurds; having laid it to the place, bind and swathe it up well; but let the Horse have rest and he will be quickly sound in that part.

Enterfering.

This happens to an Horse through a natural straitness in his pace, or through evil shooing he goeth so narrow with his hinder feet, that he cutteth the one with the other upon the inside of his legs, and by reason of this Cutting there groweth Scabs hard and mattery, by the forenes of which the Horse often halteth.

The Cure equally consists in the prevention, as well as the medicine: For the prevention, it concerns the Smith to look after that in the making of his hinder shooes, whereby he may go wider.

Now for his feet, thus hurt by hewing, make this Salve: Take of May-Butter or fresh Grease, Nerve-oil and Rozin a like quantity; then fry them well together in a pan; then take it off the fire, and put thereto some Cows-dung; let it cool, and put it into a pot, and when you would use hereof, apply it Plaister-wise, and it will not only heal the sore, but any prick in the foot whatsoever.

Or you may help, or at leastwise hide for a small time, enterfering, thus: Fasten a new Cord to his Dock, and having made divers hard knots thereon, draw it between his legs, and fasten it to his Girths; or otherwise rub good store of Starch between his Thighs.

Eating away of Knobs, or any superfluous dead flesh.

Sometimes it so happens that an Horse may have a bone growing on some part of his body, more than what is natural; sometimes Lumps and Bunches of superfluous flesh, and this is called an Excretion, which doth proceed from rough and phlegmatick substances, stirred up either by most sore bruises or wounds imperfectly healed; that is, when Cauticks or burning Corrosives are applied to wounds that are near the bone; as when the wound is either in the Leg, or about the Pasterns; for that the flesh being extremely burned and mortified by such Cauticks and Corrosives, it doth cause an Excretion to grow upon the bone; now oftentimes the Wound is healed up, but the Excretion remains still upon the Bone, which occasioneth a new Cure, which must be in this manner. With an Incision-knife first scarifie the Excretion, then apply Sulphur and Bitumen, or Coloquintida burnt and sifted; and having quite eaten away the Excretion, then heal it up with drying Salves, as the powder of Honey, Lime, or Bole-armoniack. Others are of opinion that this way is best: first make the Excretion to bleed well; then take 2 ounces of Vine-ashes and as much unslak'd lime mixt with 6 ounces of strong Lye, first strained, then sod till half be consumed, and so consolidated; apply this to the Excretion and it will soon eat it away, then heal it up as aforesaid.

Others approve of this last way as the best: Take Elecampane-root, newly gathered, and having cleansed it from its Earth, wrap it up

in a brown paper, and cover it up in the hot Embers till it be fully roasted, like pap; then take it, and as hot as your Horse can endure it (for you must not scald him) lay it to the Excretion (after you have rubbed, knocked and chafed the Excretion, binding this roasted root close thereunto, letting it remain compleatly a day and a night before you remove it) the third dressing, after this manner, will rot and consume the Excretion to nothing.

Now for the eating away of any proud flesh, which you shall perceive to grow in any Wound, Ulcer or Sore, which dead flesh you shall know by the insensibility thereof, being of a spongy hollow substance; you shall take fresh grease and Verdegriese, and boil them together, of each a like quantity, and being well boiled tent or plaister the Sore therewith, which will quickly bring the dead flesh to a consumption.

There are great variety of medicaments that are good for the eating away any dead flesh, as Precipitate Simple is alone sufficient, *Spongia Marina* and powder of Risagallo are of like power and vertue, but that the last is too great a fretter.

But by reason there is such choice of medicines of this nature, to avoid prolixity, I shall only propose this last as the best.

Take white or black *Heleborus*, Ink, quick Sulphur, Orpiment, Lithargy, Vitriol, unslak'd Lime, Roch Alom, Galls, Soot or the Ashes of Avellan, of each half an ounce, and they will expeditiously consume all manner of dead flesh.

Eye of an Horse hurt with a blow.

The causes and signs of this Sorrance are perspicuous enough, wherefore we shall only insist on the Cure; and as to that, you must first bathe the part in warm water, next shave off all the hair about the swelling: then take the tops of Wormwood, Pellitory and *Branca Ursina* of each half an handful; chop the Herbs very small, and then beat them to an Ointment with old Boar's Grease, *quantum sufficit*: then put to it of live Honey and Wheat-flower of each one spoonful, and of Linseed-oyl three spoonfuls; boil these very well, continually stirring them; when boiled enough, strain it into a Gally-pot well stopped, and keep it for your use: when you have occasion to make use thereof, only anoint the place grieved therewith.

Eye-film, Pin and Web.

These distempers are commonly engendred by distillation of bad humours from the head to the eyes, by a stripe, or some Hay-dust getting therein; the signs are visible.

The Cure must be thus effected: Take Camphire, *Sal Armoniacum* or Sugar Candy, any of these pulverized very fine and blown into the eye, are most soveraign for these diseases in the Eyes of the Horse.

If a Film or Pearl grow without a Pin or Web: then take the tops of red Nettles, and, having stamp't them well, put them into a clean linnen cloth; the Nettles being in the rag, dip them into Beer slightly; then wring forth the juice of the said Nettles into some clean Vessel; which done, put thereto a little Salt made into
fine

fine powder; the Salt being dissolved, convey but one drop at a time into the grieved Eye, morning and evening, and this will totally remove the Film.

If it be a Pin and Web that afflicts the Eye of the Horse; then take Cuttle-bone, Tartar, Salt-gem of each the like quantity, and make them all into fine powder and mix them, and with a quill blow of some of this powder into the Eye of the Horse twice or thrice a day, and you will find it a speedy remedy.

If it be an Haw in the Horse's Eye; I would not advise you to take it away, as Smiths usually do, from the outside of the Eye, but from that part which lieth next of all to the Eye, and this way will better preserve the sight of the Eye, as also the Wash which is the ornament thereof; for if that be taken away, the Horse will appear blear-eyed; so soon as you have cut away the Haw, wash the Eye with white Wine and the juice of Celandine mingled together, of each a like quantity; for this not only healeth the Sorrance, but keepeth the Eye from rankling.

Eye-Canker.

If a Canker happen to be in your Horses Eye, (as it is a thing very usual) then take your true ground-Ivy, and stamp it well in a Mortar, and if it be very dry, then moisten it with a little white Rose-water, or the water of Eye-bright distilled, and so strain it into a clean Glass, and therewith wash, anoint and tent the Sorrance, and it will speedily cure it: this is also very good for Blood-shotten Eyes.

If any Wart or spongy Excretion grow near
to

to the Eye of the Horse, which usually proceeds from a condensed flegm that descendeth to the Eyes, & will in a little time much prejudice them: Take Roch Allom and burn it, and then add to it as much white Coperas unburnt; grind them together into very fine powder; then lay a little of this powder on the top of the Wart; but be cautious that none fall into the Eye, for it will corrode exceedingly.

Let the Wart be thus dressed every day once, and in a very little time it will so eat away the root of the Wart that it shall never come more.

Eyes Lunatick or Moon-blind.

The only reason I can gather why an Horse is called Moon-blind is, that at certain times of the Moon he will see well, at other times a little, and sometimes not at all, and therefore this Malady is called Lunatick or Moon-blind.

This kind of blindness is held the worst of all other; you may know by the colour of his Eyes, when he seeth, and when he doth not; when he doth see, his Eyes will appear dim and yellowish; but when he is blind, then will his eyes look red and fiery.

This distemper comes sometimes hereditary, either from his Sire or Dam: sometimes again from ill humours descending from the head and taking up their abode in and about the Eyes; and this usually happens by exposing the poor Creature to more labour than nature could perform.

The Cure must be by taking Pitch, Rozin and Mastick, of each a like quantity; melt them together,

gether, and having beforehand provided two Plaisters of Leather, the breadth of an half Crown-piece, spread the medicine hot upon these two Plaisters, and apply them to his Temples, letting them stick thereon till they fall off of their own accord ; then rowel him on the face, just under his Eyes, with a small French Rowel, the breadth of three pence at most, and let it be turned every day once, the space of fourteen days : then take forth the Rowel and heal up the orifice with the green Ointment I prescribed in treating of drawing a Stub or Thorn.

By the way take notice, That if your Horse be weak sighted, when ever you draw blood from him, the less you take the better it is for his sight.

Eye broken, and beaten out by some stripe or unlucky stroke.

As soon as this unhappy accident hath befallen your Horse, that his Eye is absolutely broken and beaten out by some unhappy stroke : Take Alom and first burn it in a fire-pan ; then put it on the hot coals, and let it burn there till all the moisture be consumed, so that it becometh as light as a feather, as white as snow, and so brittle that it will break with the least touch ; then take of this powder and mix it with live Honey, and stir them well together, so that you reduce them to an ointment ; then take a feather and dip it herein, and morning and evening put thereof into his Eye ; then lay your hand upon the Eye-place a pretty while, that the Unguent may not issue out of the hole ; by so doing in few daies the hurt will be cured, though it be impossible for the Eye to be restored.

Eyes

Eyes troubled with any sores, an incomparable Water for them.

Take the Stone called *Lapis Calaminaris*, and heat it red hot in the fire, then quench it in half a pint of white Wine, so doing twelve times together: then add unto it half the quantity of the juice of Housleek, and with this wash and bathe the Eye twice or thrice a day; this is good for any infirmity whatsoever belonging to the Eyes.

Here followeth another Water not inferiour to the other.

Take a pint of Snow-water, and dissolve therein four drachms of white Vitriol; wash the Horses eyes herewith at least four times a day, and the effects will be admirable.

Eye-bitten.

This frequently happens as Horses stand in the Stable, one Horse biting the other, where he can best or next fasten his teeth: if so then it fall out that your Horse be Eye-bitten, take a little Honey with a little grated Ginger; mingle them together and put them into the Horses Eye with a feather three mornings together.

Ears Impostumated.

This disease proceeds from several causes; either from some violent stroke about the Ears or Poll, or else by being wrung too hard with a new hempen hard Halter; sometimes by a cold in the head, or by other ill humours, which strive to get a vent or passage through the Ears.

The signs are apparent: for the Ears will burn, glow and swell; besides, the Horse will be very unwilling to be handled thereabout.

The

The Cure is thus : Take Linseed and make it into fine powder, then take Wheat-flower of each half a pint, ordinary Honey one pint, tried Hogs-grease one pound; mix all these well, and warm them on the fire, continually stirring them; then spread this Unguent upon a Linnen cloth or Leather, the breadth of the swelling, and lay it thereon very warm; once in a day and a night renew it, till it break, or be so ripe as that it may be convenient to lance it, which must be downwards, that the corruption may have a more easie passage; then heal it thus :

Take *Mel Rosarum*, Sallet-oyl and ordinary Turpentine of each two ounces, make these into a body; then make a Night-cap to keep on the Plaister; tent the sore to the bottom with this Ointment, and make a Plaister thereof and lay it on the place grieved: once a day you must lay on a fresh Plaister, and tent anew till it be whole.

But if the Ears be only inflamed, then take Oil of Roses, Venice Turpentine and common Honey of each a like quantity; mix them well together, and making them blood-warm, dip some black wool therein, and stop the Ears therewith, renewing it once a day, and it will remove the Inflammation.

Foul and old Sores how to cleanse and mundifie.

This following Water hath been often tried, and upon trial found to be a most excellent cleansing and healing Water for all old and rotten Sores.

Take of green Coperas and of Salt-petre of each half a pound, Bay Salt and Salt-gem of each
three

three ounces, Arsnick one Ounce, powder all these finely, and put them into a stillitory Glasse, the pot or bottom thereof well nealed, adde thereunto one pint of the strongest White-Wine-Vinegar; set the pot on the fire, and put on the head, closing it with Cute of Hermes; and being thus placed in the Furnace, make under it a strong fire for the space of five or six hours, and with your Receptory take the first water that cometh; after an hour the fire will be out of the water, then stop up the Glasse very close, and preserve it for your use.

When you are to wash any sore with this water, have a care that you do not let any fall upon either Vein or Sinew, for it will burn them in twain: but where Ulcers and foul old sores are in the flesh, this water will work wonders.

Falling of the Fundament.

The falling of the Fundament is a Distemper proceeding most commonly from over much laxitiveness and flux of blood, who growing exceeding weak, by the voiding thereof strainerth to bring forth something, and instead thereof the fundament cometh out; sometimes it comes by Colds or mere Poverty.

Cure it thus: take white Salt made into very fine powder, strew a little upon the Gut; then take a piece of Lard, and first having boiled Mallow leaves till they be soft, take of these leaves and beat them well with the Lard, and when sufficiently beaten, make it up in the fashion of a Suppository, and apply it fresh to the place once a day.

178 The Cures of all Outward

Fetlock hurt.

The Fetlock may be hurt by casting the Horse with the double rope, or sometimes by a bite of a Dog : if by either of these this Sorrance happens, take unslaked Lime and the Yolk of an Egge, of each a like quantity, beat them together to an Oyntment, then mix therewith the juice of one head of Garlick and a little foot, and anoint herewith the sore till it be almost well, but skin it over thus : take Sallet Oyl and Oyl of Roses, of each one Ounce, of Turpentine three Ounces, and of new Wax one Ounce, melt them well together, and adde to them the fourth part of the powder of Verdigrease, and herewith anoint the sore, in few days it will skin over the sore, and heal it.

Foundring in the feet, if new, a suddain Cure.

If your Horse be foundred in his feet, but of no longer standing than seven or eight days, with this following remedy you may restore his feet to their former soundness.

First, let him blood in the Neck, Breast, and Spur-Veins, taking from thence two quarts, and receive it in a cleane vessel, and therewith make this ensuing charge.

Take the blood, and put into it eight or nine new laid Egges, shells and all, and beat them well with the blood, put to them of Bole-Armoniack pulverized very fine half a pound, strong White-Wine-Vinegar one pint, Sanguis Draconis three Ounces finely pulverized, make this up thick with Wheat Meal; with this charge his Back, Reins, Breasts, Thighs, Fetlocks, and Soles, and apply two cloths Plaitterwise to the
Coffin

Coffin of his hoofs, and bind the forelegs above strait with broad filletting, then ride him two hours upon an hard way, if paved best of all, then set him up.

This Foot-foundring in an Horse is a certain numbness, pricking or tingling within his hoofs, and I can compare it to no more proper thing, than when any of us by cross sitting do cause our feet to be asleep as we say vulgarly, during which time we are so disinabled from going that we cannot stand but with some difficulty; so it fareth with an Horse, the course of whose blood being stopped, those obstructions cause that torment.

Several are the causes of this Malady; briefly, it comes sometimes by taking off his Saddle too suddainly after a great heat, or by standing still in the cold unwalked, or by standing in some shallow Water after he hath been ridden no higher than his Fetlock, or by too strait and uneasy shooes.

Now though I have already prescribed a remedy for this foundring, I cannot let this one more pass, which for its excellency can hardly be valued, and is good for all sorts of Foundrings new or old.

In the first place, you must with a very sharp drawing knife draw every part of the soles of the Horses feet as thin as possibly you may, even till you draw water and blood from him, and pare every part alike: then at the very sharp end of the frush of the Horses foot you shall see the Vein lye, then with your knives end lift up the hoof, and bleed the Vein; which it will do indifferently

180. The Cures of all Outward

ly plentiful as long as you hold up the hoof, when it hath bled somewhat more than a pint, close up the hoof, and so stop the Vein : then fasten on his hoof an hollow shooe made for that purpose ; having so done, clap a little Tow dipt in Hogs Grease, and Turpentine very hard : then take two or three Egges roasted very hard, and coming burning hot from the fire, break them on the sole of the Horses foot ; then pour upon them Hogs grease, Turpentine, and Tar boiling hot, and as much flax dipt therein as will fill up the hollow shooe ; then lay on a piece of Leather to keep all in ; in this manner dress as many of his feet as are foundred : dress him thus thrice in a fortnight, and you need not question but that your Horse will be as sound as ever he was.

Fretting.

If an Horse be fretted (or as some improperly term it foundred) by reason of an uneasy strait shooe ; then you need do no other than take off his shooe, and blood-let him on the toes, then stopping the place with bruised Sage, fasten on his shooe again, and stop it with Hogs grease and bran boiled together as hot as he can indure it ; do this twice in a fortnight and it will be a perfect Cure

Frothy or weeping Hoof.

This Frothy or weeping hoof is commonly occasioned by some Channel Nail, or bruise by treading on a stone, and afterwards rankling : if so, you must first raise the skin with your Cornet-Horn, and lay upon the Sorrance Wheat-flower and Bores grease well incorporated, and dress him with this two days together ; then take
the

the powder of quick Lime, Sope and Tallow, and mix them well together, and for four days apply that to the sore.

But I have a better opinion of this ensuing receipt, and therefore I shall not much commend the former.

If you observe the hoof to weep or froth by evacuating thin, watry or frothy stuff, then open the top thereof with your Cornet, so as the wound may become hollow all about the extremities thereof, so that you may come to the Master Vein, and breaking it asunder, let it bleed what it will; when the Vein hath left bleeding, fill up the Wound with Salt very finely powder'd; then take hurds and steep them in Vinegar, and so stop the wound therewith, and bind thereto a cloth to keep the same from falling away: this is an approved remedy.

I shall close my discourse of Founders with this one receipt more which is a Sovereign Medicine for all sorts of Founders, Frettizes, Surbaits, or any imperfection whatsoever in the feet.

First, pare them, open the heels wide, and draw good store of blood from the Toes, then rack on a shooe somewhat hollow; after this, take of the best Frankincense, and rolling it in a little fine Cotton Wool or Bombaste, with an hot Iron melt it into the foot betwixt the shooe and the Toe, till the hole from whence issued the blood be filled up. Then take half a pound of Hogs grease, and melt it on the fire, then mix it with Wheat bran till it be as thick as Pulteis; then boiling hot stop up the Horses foot therewith, then cover it with a piece of an old shoe

182 The Cures of all Outward

and splent it up, and so let the Horse stand for four or five days, and in that time you may expect the cure to be effected; if not, renew it again, till he be sound.

False quarters.

A false quarter takes its denomination from the scituation of the Sorrance on the hoof, making that part of the hoof look as if it did not properly belong to the whole, but was artificially set on; it most commonly afflicts the inside of the hoof, because it is the weakest part, and these insides are called quarters, thence a *false quarter*, which is no more than to say a sick and an unsound quarter.

The false quarter happens frequently from evil shoeing, ill paring, and sometimes by pricking with a Nail.

The common Symptoms are, the Horse will halt much, the rift will bleed, and when the shooe is off there is nothing will interpose between the Sorrance and your sight, but that it will be palpably apparent.

The cure whereof is to cut away the old corrupt hoof, and then take the whites of nine Eggs, the powder of Incense, of unslackt Lime, of Mastick, of Verdigrease, and of Salt, of each three Qunces, mingle these well together, then dip in as much hurds as will cover the fore hoof, lay it on, and all about it lay Swines grease an Inch thick, or more; do this also below it; bind this on in such wise that it may not be stirred for a whole fortnight at least; then apply it fresh again, and the Horse will require no other dressing to accomplish the cure.

Now

Now if any corruption be gathered together within the false quarter in such manner that the Horse will go halting with much pain and difficulty, which matter you shall know if there be any there, by laying your finger on the false quarter, at which the Horse will start or shrink if it be ripe; if so, open it with a drawing knife, and let out the corruption, then lay thereon Horse dung, Oyl, Salt and Vinegar, mixt together in the manner of a Plaitter, this will not only heal the Sorrhance, but consolidate the hoof, and make it firm: at first after the cure is wrought be careful in shooing him till his hoof be thoroughly hardned.

There is yet another way to cure this Sorrhance which by Mr. Grey is accounted the best he ever met with, and was taught him by a very skillful French Farrier, which is this.

Take a piece of wood that is flat, and form it an inch broad at least, making it so thin and slender that it will bend like an hoop, which must be long enough to come twice about the Cronet of the hoof; get also an indifferent long piece of Filletting in readinels, and cut it in two pieces; then having brought the hoop about the Cronet with one piece of the filletting bind fast the top of the hoop, making it fast behind against the heel: then take the other piece of filletting, and fasten it to the top of the first filletting, sowing it as well on the one side of the hoof as on the other.

But I should have told you that before you fasten on the hoop you must draw the Sorrhance of the false quarter with a drawing Iron, so close,

184 The Cures of all Outward

and near that you come to the very quick, which you know by the flowing of a certain kind of dewy moisture, let that be your sign for binding on your hoop, having before prepared this Salve in a readinesse to fill up the chinks of the said quarter.

Take of the roots of *Lingua Bovis* green, and newly gathered, of the roots of *Consolida Major* and the root of *Mallows*, of each half a pound; wash them and scrape them clean, and cut them into small pieces; boil these in two quarts of *Ali-gant* till the liquor be consumed, and the roots become soft, then pound them very well, and strain them through a fine *Searser*, reserving a little of the wine to moisten it that it may strain the better: then take of *Venice Turpentine*, new *Wax*, *Burgundy Pitch*, of each half a pound, of black *Pitch* four Ounces, of the oldest *Oyl Olive* one quart, put these together with the former recited ingredients into a clean *Kettle*, after this manner; first the roots, then the other ingredients in their order by themselves, but not the *Turpentine* till all the other are melted; let these boil together till all the *Wine* be consumed, and the ingredients be well incorporated, then take them off the fire, and put in your *Turpentine*; then let it have one walm or two over the fire; then take it off, continually stirring it till it be cold, and so preserve it for your use.

With this Salve anoint and rub well the place where the hoop and filletting is to be bound on; and having fastned them, take *Hurds*, and rowl it up into a *Rowl*, the full length of the rift or chink of the quarter; and having first anointed the

the Hurd very well with the Salve bind it thereon.

When you dress him, which must be once in three days, unty all, as well the hoop as filleting, and continue so doing till you find an absolute cure.

Fig.

The Fig is a disease which derives its denomination from the shape of the Sorrhance, which is naughty and superfluous flesh, growing on the frush or heel in the likeness of a Fig, being full of little white grains, as you may perceive in a Fig opened; and this Malady is occasioned either by stub, great nail, thorn, bone, splent, or stone, either in the sole, or any other part of the foot.

The old experienced Farriers were wont to cut the fig away with a hot Iron, and keep the flesh from rising with Turpentine, Hogs grease, and a little Wax molten together, and laid on with a little Tow, stopping the hole very hard, keeping down the flesh, and applying this fresh every day till the sore be healed.

But latter experience finds this to be much better: after you have cut away the Fig close with an Incision knife, but it is much better to burn it off with a red hot Iron; if so, then lay for two days together tryed Hogs grease to draw out the fire; then take the tops of the most angry young Nettles you can find, pound them very small, and spread them on a linnen cloth just the bigness of the Fig; then take the powder of Verdigrease, and strew it on the plaister of Nettle tops before you lay it to the Sorrhance, then bind it thereon, laying fresh every day till the hoof grow perfect and sound; this is a remedy will never fail you.

Frusk

Frush running or rotten.

The running Frush is a Sorrhance called by some Country Smiths the Frog ; because it breedeth in that spongy part of the Heel, which they call the Frog. I know not for what reason they should give it that appellation, since it is formed and fashioned like a forked Arrow-head, and is the tenderest part of the Hoof towards the Heel ; this is that part which when Farriers cut, they say they cut forth the sole of the Horses foot.

The causes of this Sorrhance are several ; as first, when the Smith inconsiderately pareth that part to the quick, which afterwards becomes sore and often turns to the Running Frush ; which will so sink as not to be endured, by reason of the Gravel getting into it through travel, causing a rankling and impostumation ; sometimes it happeneth by an evil humour, falling down into the legs, and making its way out through the Frush, being the softest and tenderest part of the foot : now though hereby the legs are kept clean from Wind-galls, and all other tumours and swellings, by reason that the humours have passage that way, yet by reason of the corruption gathering into that part, I look upon the mischief of this Sorrhance much greater than the advantage it brings with it, making the Horses foot so weak and tender, that he is not able to tread on any hard ground.

The signs are ; he will ever go best on green swarth ; but when he comes into hard and dry dirty ways he will halt, by reason of the Gravel getting in, fretting and paining him to the quick ; and you shall observe that when he resteth, the
Frush

Frush will weep, sending forth a watry stuff which will so stink the scent will be insufferable.

The Cure: Take stale Chamber-lye, and boil it with a quantity of Alom, and keep it close stopped in a Glass; then take of red Nettles two handfuls, the strongest and most angry; dry them well, and reduce them to powder; and what quantity of this powder you have, join to it as much beaten Pepper, and mix them well together, and keep it in a dry Bladder for your use; when you have occasion to make use thereof, take off the shooe, and open the Frush; then wash the sorrance to the very bottom, with this water and powder mixed together and warmed; then hollow the shooe that it hurt not the Frush, and so put it on; but before you do it, the foot being well washed and cleansed from all putrefaction and gravel, fill the hole with the aforementioned powder, and stop it with Hurds, and splent it, that the Hurds may keep in the powder, and that nothing may come to prejudice the Sorrance; and thus renew the washing with filling up the hole with the powder every day once, and in seven or eight days it will be perfectly cured, provided you suffer no dung to come to the place afflicted, and that he tread not on any wet during the time of the Cure.

Fistula.

A Fistula is a running Ulcer, deep, hollow and crooked, being much straiter at the mouth or orifice than at the bottom, occasioned by some wound, bruise, sore or canker not thoroughly healed,

healed, sometimes proceeding from malignant humours, sometimes from a stripe, which being strongly laid home, and bruising the flesh to the bone, it afterwards putrifies inwardly and turns to a Fistula; or lastly, it comes by being wrung by the Tree of an ill-made Saddle.

The signs hereof are so apparent they need not an *Ecce* in their discovery; therefore let us pass to the Cure, which must be thus.

First, take some pliable thing, as a Goose-quill, a small piece of Lead or a rod, and therewith probe or search the bottom thereof, making your Probe to bend which way soever the crooked cavity of the Fistula leaneth. Having found the bottom thereof, make so large an incision that the corruption may have a free passage downwards; but have a care you do not cut in sunder any Master-Sinew or main Tendon, then tent it two or three days with Hogs-grease to the intent the hole may be the more dilated.

This being done, make this Injection: Take of Sublimate and Precipitate of each as much as will lie upon a groat, Alom and white Coperas of each three ounces; burn all these in an earthen pot, but let not the bottom burn, which you may prevent by first rubbing thereon some Oil; then take two quarts of fair water, and having boiled it alone and scummed it, put therein, having first taken it from the fire, as much of this powder as will lie on a Crown-piece; inject of this water in a Syringe, and it will not only kill but heal the Fistula in a very short time.

Some, not inferiour in skill to any, take this course for the Cure; viz. Take one pint of the
best

best Honey, of Verdegriese one ounce made into fine powder, and so boil them together near an hour upon a soft fire; having so done, strain it into some Vessel that is clean, and preserve it for your use : this is an incomparable Ointment wherewith to tent any Fistula or Polevil ; for it descendeth to the bottom, and speedily eateth away all dead flesh, whereby that which is carnifying may heal the better.

If the matter or corruption be plentiful, then dress him herewith twice a day ; but continue so doing no longer than one day, then dress him after this manner :

Take of Turpentine, Swines-grease, Sheeps-fuet of each a like quantity ; and being molten together make a Salve thereof, and dress him therewith six days together, observing to make your tent of very fine soft linnen cloth and fine flax, not making your tent too big after the second dressing ; then lay upon and about the fore this Pultels : First, take two gallons of fair water, and having boiled it, scum it well ; then take three handfuls of Mallows, and the like of the leaves of Violets, with two of Oat-meal or more ; put these into the former water with Hogs-mort and fresh Butter of each a pound, and let it boil till it become thick, like paste, and so apply it hot to the fore.

Now some, on the other side, will make use of no other thing for the cure of a Fistula than this : Take the outermost green shells of Walnuts, and put them in a Tub, strowing three or four handfuls of Bay-salt upon them on the top, midst and bottom, and so keep them all the year, and when they

they have occasion to use them, they take a pint thereof with a little Bay-salt, two ounces of black Soap, half a spoonful of May-butter, or instead thereof fresh Butter, and incorporate them well together, and with this they tent or plaister the Fistula, anointing the Sorrance with Turpentine two hours before they lay on the Plaister; observing thus to do till the Fistula be perfectly healed.

Lastly, let me prescribe you two Remedies more, not inferiour to any afore-recited, and I have done.

Take Verdigrise, Butter and Salt; mingle and melt these together; having so done pour it, scalding hot into the sore; and thus use it till all the flesh be red; after this, tent it with Verdigrise, burnt Allom, Wheat-flower and the Yolks of Eggs, well beaten and mingled together; and lastly, skin it with Barm and Soot mixt together.

Take a pint of the strongest Vinegar you can get, and having made it hot on the fire, add thereunto of the Lome of a Clay-wall, which hath no lime in it, but pick not out the straws therein, and so boil them together till they become a Salve; being indifferently hot spread it over the Sorance, especially such places as feel hard; do thus twice a day, and it will not only ripen but heal the Fistula: this is also a sovereign Cure for any galled or bruised back, how grievously sore soever.

Frets.

A Fret is not much unlike an Ulcer, only it is more hard and knotty, not spreading but residing
in

in one place, sometimes between the skin and flesh (Farcy like) and will not break.

The best and most approved Cure is, to make a strong Lye with old Urine, Ash-ashes and green Copperas, and bathing the knots herewith, it will not only kill but heal them. Others take a Snake, and throwing away the head and tail, roast the rest of the body cut into pieces, and preserving the grease that droppeth, anoint the place aggrieved, healing thereby this malady in a short time; but in anointing the fore they always are very cautious they touch no sound place therewith; for the venenosity thereof will poison.

Now if your Horse be fretted or galled under the belly, as it frequently happens, when the Girths are crumpled or knotty, and therewithal drawn too strait; then take of Oyl de Bay and Oyl of Balm two ounces, of Pitch two ounces, of Tar two ounces, and one ounce of Rozin; mingle these well together, and anoint the fretted place therewith; then take chop'd Flax and lay thereon, not removing but letting it fall off of it self; this will infallibly cure him.

Gravelling.

An Horse comes to be gravelled by sand getting in between the sole and the hoof, or the sole and the shoe, sometimes on the inside, sometimes on the outside, and sometimes on both sides of the heel, settling at the quick, and there fretteth and festereth. Sometimes it happeneth by the calking or spong of the shooe, which by much labour and travel doth eat through the hoof into the quick of the foot, and so much
the

the sooner, by how much the Horses heels are soft and weak ; or that the shooe, lying too flat to his foot, the gravel getting in can in no wise get out again.

His grief will be soon discovered by his halting and complaining on the same foot ; which as soon as you shall discover, take up that foot he endeavoureth to favour , and you shall find it more hot than usual, and warmer than the rest of his feet.

Then take off his shooe, and with your Drawing iron draw the place till you come to the very quick, and having pickt forth all the Gravel, and crulht forth the blood and corruption, then wash your sore clean with this Copperas-water :

Take two quarts of fair water, and put it into a clean Skillet or Posnet ; then put thereto half a pound of green Copperas, and of Salt one handful, of ordinary Honey one spoonful, and two or three bunches of Rosemary, boil these together till one half of the liquor be consumed ; a little before you take it from the fire, add thereunto of Alom the quantity of a Wallnut ; taking it from the fire let it stand till it is cold, and then put it in some Vessel for your use. After this, pour on your sore Sheeps-tallow and Bay-salt molten together, scalding hot ; then stop up the hole with Hurds, and so let on the shooe again.

Dress it thus twice or thrice and it will be whole ; but let his foot be thoroughly well before you either travel him, or let his foot touch water.

Now you are to understand, that if a Gravel-ling

ing be not well stopt, to keep down the flesh, it will rise higher than the hoof, it will cost you much more labour in bolstring and abating that ill-grown carnosity.

Some of our late Farriers are of opinion, that this following receipt is an excellent remedy for any Gravelling, *viz.* First, you must so pare the hoof that the sore may be visible; then take an ounce of Virgin-wax, and a quarter of an ounce of Rozin, and as much of Deer-suet, and half an ounce of Boars-grease, and beat them all very well in a Mortar, and after that melt them together over the fire; that done, dip good store of Flax therein, and so stop up the sore close and hard; after this you may travel your Horse whither you please.

Now to the intent that your own experience may pick one out of many, which may surpass all others, let me add this one more: Take of Virgin-wax one ounce, Rozin and Deer-suet of each two ounces, Boars-grease half an ounce, and of Housleek one head; incorporate all these together in a Mortar, then melt them over a gentle fire, and so apply it hot to the Sorrance, stopping it up with Hurds, and so tack on the shoe, a very few dressings will effect the Cure.

Gourged or Gourded Legs.

This Gourge is a very bad Sorance, being an ugly and dangerous swelling in the nether part of the legs, proceeding from melting of grease by immoderate labour, or from hard beating in dry ways in the Summer time; which first causeth Wind-galls, which offending the Sinews, make them to swell; and this is the worst Gourding.

The

194 The Cures of all Outward

The signs are, a lesser swelling in his Legs when he is upon travel than when he standeth still in the stable ; this swelling is most usually attended with scabs, which commonly run into the Scratches.

The Cure is to draw him with an hot Iron, an handful above the Knee ; then rope his Legs with soft Hay, wet in water that is cold, and letting it remain twenty four hours, it will allay the swelling : I cannot approve of this Cure so well as what Mr. *Markham* prescribes, which is this :

Take up the Veins beneath the Knee, and let him bleed well, then knit the Vein both above and below ; having so done, anoint his legs with this Ointment : Take of Frankincense, Rozin and fresh Grease of each a like quantity, and having boiled them well together, strain it, and use it once a day as you shall have occasion. Have especial care in taking up the veins, lest you make your Horse go stiff ever after.

Gelding of Horses or Colts.

There are three things to be observed in the Gelding of Horses, and they are the Age, Season of the year, and state of the Moon.

First, as to the Age ; all Colts you may geld at twelve days old, or a little sooner, which I rather approve of than of fifteen or twenty days old ; for the sooner a Colt is gelded, if his stones are come down, the more it will improve his growth, shape and courage ; and though many have obstinately affirmed, that a year and a half or two years old, is the best time for gelding, yet such have been at last forced to confess the contrary by woful experience.

An

An Horse you may geld at any age whatsoever with this Provifo, that great care be taken in the Cure.

The Time or Season of the year for Gelding, the best I hold to be at Spring and Fall, that is to say, from the latter end of March till the beginning of October.

Lastly, as to the state of the Moon, then is the best time when she is in the decrease; and this is not only the opinion of all ancient Farriers, but is confirmed by the experience of those of later practice.

Now as to the general manner of Gelding, whether of Foal, Colt or Horse, it is thus: Let the place you chuse to cast him on be Straw or a soft Dunghil, not too moist; then taking the stone between your foremost finger and your great finger, with a fine Incision-knife slit the Cod, so that you may only press the stone forth; then with a pair of small Nippers, very smoth, clasp the strings of the stone between them, very near to the setting on of the stone, and press them so hard that there may be no flux of blood; then with a thin Cauterizing-iron red hot, sear away the stone; then take a hard Plaister of Rozin, Wax, and washt Turpentine, well molten together, and with your hot Iron melt it on the head of the strings, and having sear'd the strings, lay a good quantity of this Salve thereon; then loose the Nippers, and as you did with one stone so do with the other.

Having thus done, fill the two flits of the Cod with white Salt; then take Hogs-grease clean rendred, and anoint the outside of the Cod, as also

his Thighs and Belly over, and so let him rise.

If after his gelding, you perceive any extraordinary swelling either in his Sheath or Cod; then chase him up and down, making him once a day to trot for an hour, and it will remedy it perfectly.

Garget in Horse or Beast only.

I conceive that there is little difference between the Garget and Plague, Pestilence or Murrain, being all malignant and Pestilential distempers, the Infected being infectious to those Horses which stand by them; it is present death to open a Vein in this disease.

You may know this disease by these signs or symptoms: He will hang down his head very much, gumming thick matter at the eyes, as big as the top of a mans finger, his pace will be weak and staggering, with swelling oftentimes in his head, but his body will very much decay on a sudden, and yet have a good stomach to his meat.

For the Cure take this Prescription: Take of Diapente, Dialphora, *London-Treacle*, Mithridate and Saffron of each the quantity of an Hasel-nut, an handful of Wormwood, as much of red Sage, Rhubarb the quantity of an Hasel-nut, two Cloves of Garlick; boil all these together in two pints of good Beer, till it hath consumed one half, then give it him to drink lukewarm fasting, and keep him very warm: the very next thing you give him, let it be a warm Mash made of ground malt, and let him drink warm water for a week, giving him sometimes
some

some bursten Oars, and clean sweet Hay; it is sweating that must effect the Cure. Now forasmuch as Cows also are troubled with this distemper, know that about half the quantity of what, in this Receipt, is prescribed for an Horse, is an excellent Remedy for a Cow. *Probatum.*

A Garget sometimes seizeth the throat of an Ox, Cow or Bullock, causing a swelling in the sides, and often cometh for want of water.

For the Cure, you must cast the beast; then cut the skin through on the midst of the swelling, fleaing the skin on each side, as far as the swelling extendeth; then take fine white Wood-Ashes sifted, and mix them with mould stale old Piss; stir them well together, and wash the sore therewith, and it will dissipate the swelling.

If the Garget be under the root of a Cows or BULLOCKS tongue, there swelling, causing his head and face to swell also, frothy at mouth, and forsaking his meat; then must you cure him by first casting him so, that by the fall he bruise not his body; then with your hand pull out his tongue as far as you can, and with the point of a Lancet or sharp Pen-knife, slit down the middle Vein under his tongue about an Inch, and from thence will issue black blood and water, proceeding from the gall; then with Salt and Vinegar mingled together, wash or rub the place therewith and the Cure is wrought.

But if the Garget be in the Guts, the signs will be like the former, *viz.* running at the eyes, slavering at the mouth, &c. and for the remedy,

198 The Cures of all Outward

take an Egg-shell filled full with Tar, and put it down the Cows or Bullocks throat, then take two handfuls of Salt and put it into a pint of Verjuice; then with a Horn convey it down the throat of the beast; then drive him to and fro till he dung, and let four hours after be the time of his fasting.

Galled Back that cometh by the Saddle, or Sbackle.

For an Horse to have a Galled back is very common, and hapneth so many several ways, that it would not only be tedious but endless to describe them. I shall therefore only insift upon the most material, and that is either by the Saddle, Pannel, Pack saddle, or Male-pillion, which frequently injure the back of an Horse, either by evil stuffing or want of stuff, or the Tree may be so faulty, that all the art of an ingenious Saddler shall not be able to correct the error; and that is, when at first it is not rightly shaped, or afterwards by accident either crack'd or broken.

You need not enquire after the signs, for they are commonly visible; as great swelling, hair fretted off, skin broken, and the back raw with inflammation; but if none of these symptoms appear, and yet the Horses back is certainly wrung by the Saddle; you may find it out by stroking your hand all along his back when the Saddle is off; if hurt, he will shake his head, winch with his tail, shake, he will offer to strike or bite, &c.

If you find that his back is swelled without impostumation, clap on the swelling some of his wet Litter, and setting on his Saddle again,

so let him remain with his Saddle on all night, and by the next morning his swelling will be so abated as not to be discerned.

If the hair be only galled off, and the place be not impostumated, then only anoint the part with a little Butter and Salt melted together, and you need dress him but twice to make it perfectly whole.

But if the Back be so galled, that not only the hair is fretted off, but the skin too, and the place appears palpably raw, then take three parts of new Sheeps-dung, and one part of Wheat-flower, and mingle them well together, kneading into paste and flattning it, bake it a little; then take some of the powder hereof warm, and lay it to the place; this is a speedy Cure.

Now if your Horse be galled by Lock, Cord or Shackle, then, believe me, this is a sovereign remedy: Take of live Honey seven Spoonfuls, of Verdegriese half an ounce, and boil them together till the Honey be half consumed, and that it become red; then put it into some clean pot, and anoint the Sorrance therewith, made warm twice every day; and when you have anointed the place, cast thereon hurds cut very short, to keep on the Ointment, and this will heal it speedily.

Next to this we must consider an Horses back that is so galled, that it is withal so inflamed, that there is no expectation but that much impostumation will follow, before it be cured; then you may do well to take Barm, and so much Soot as will thicken it, not so thick as Paste, but somewhat fluid like Tar, and therewith make a Plai-

ster, and lay it to the Sorranee :

Now, besides what is already spoken of, there are many more things which will cure a Galled back ; as the powder of Briar leaves well dried ; the Powder of Honey and unslak'd Lime ; the powder of wild Cowcumbers, dried in an oven, will effect this cure, so that the Sorranee be first washed in Vinegar ; the bone of a Crab-fish pulverized, or the powder of Oyster-shells will do the like ; but that which may serve instead of all the rest is ; Take Hay and boil it in strong Urine, and lay it to the swelled place, and it will assuage the pain and bring it to suppuration ; then lance it, and let out the corruption ; then stop the Orifice with Rozin, Wax and fresh Grease all molten together ; but if you perceive that dead flesh grow within the sore, then eat it out with Verdigrease pulverized or Precipitate, strowing thereof on the proud flesh ; when that is effected, the powder of Rozin is sufficient to dry it up perfectly.

Gigs.

Gigs are Bladders are small soft swellings with black heads, afflicting the inside of the Horses lips, immediately under his great Jaw-teeth ; they will sometimes grow very big, about the size almost of a Pidgeons Egg, and then will prove so painful, that the poor Beast is forced to let the meat drop out of his mouth, or else he will not be capable of chewing it ; so that by consequence he cannot be in a condition of thriving : their common Original is from eating either too much grass, or else proceeding from prickly hay or provender : when you feel them,

as easily you may, then slit them with an Incision-knife, and having thrust out the corruption, wash the sore places with Alom-water; or burn the swellings with a small hot Iron, and then wash them with Beer and Salt, which will instantly heal them.

Grief in the Withers.

The Wither of an Horse, as well as his back, are subject to very many Sorrances, proceeding from causes both internal and external, the first from corrupt and putrified humours, the second from galling, pinching, wringing, &c. The old Practitioners of this Art were wont, as soon as ever they espied any swelling on the Horses back or Withers (especially if it were great) to pierce it in several places with an hot Iron, and then tent it with linnen cloth, dipt in Sallet-oil warmed, and afterwards they dried and healed it up with powder of Honey and Lime mixt together.

Those of later experience rather chose to lay wet Hay thereunto; for that will either drive it away or ripen it; and being broken, they then applied a Plaister of Wine-lees, renewing it as often as it grew dry. But by reason I have already treated at large of a galled Back, it will be a Tautology to discourse further of the griefs appertaining to the Withers of an Horse.

General Scab or Leprosie.

This general Maunge or Leprosie diffuseth it self over all the body of an Horse, and happens by much Melancholy blood abounding.

For this Malady or general Scab you must first
lee

let him bleed in the Neck-vein, on the one side, and the next day on the other, two days after that in the Flank veins, and after the same distance of time in the Tail; then take Brine and wash therewith all the sore places, rubbing them hard with a wisp of straw till they bleed soundly and are raw, then anoint his body with an Unguent thus prepared:

Take of Quicksilver one ounce, of Hogs-grease one pound, of Brimstone pulverized three ounces, of Rape-oil a pint.

Mingle these well together, until the Quick-silver be imbodyed with the rest; and having laid this Ointment on all the raw places, cause it to sink into the flesh, by holding close thereunto a hot bar of Iron somewhat broad.

For diversity sake, and that you may not be stinted in your choice, to every disease I give you several Cures, and that I may follow my former method, I shall lay you here down one more no way inferiour to the former.

After you have let your Horse bleed, take an old Wool-card, and rub all the Horses sores till they bleed; then take a pottle of stale Urine, and add thereunto a quarter of a pound of green Copras; mix and stir these well together, then boil them a while; then as hot as the Horse can endure it, wash it all over herewith; about an hour afterwards, take of Quicksilver two ounces, of Oil one ounce and a half, of white *Haleborus* one ounce, with a good quantity of Swines-grease; mingle these so well together that none of the Quicksilver may be visible, and therewith anoint the Horse; let the Horse, during the time of

of his cure, be dieted sparingly; and then, if the first dressing cure him not, the second will do it infallibly.

Hurl bone disjoined.

The Hurl-bone is scituate much about the middle of the buttock, and upon a slip or strain is very subject to dislocation.

For the cure, take of Oyl of Turpentine and strong Beer, and put these into a glass bottle, then shake these well together, and having so done, as near as you can pour a little hereof right over the socket of the Hurl-bone, the breadth of an ordinary Saucer, and rub it in with your hand. It will make the skin to swell up, and it will be very sore; then anoint him on the brawn and thick part of the Thigh, and so down to the stifle. In the time of the cure drive in a wooden wedge between the toe and the shooe, and so let him stand day and night; as you see your Horse mend, so you may ride him accordingly.

*Horse-spice, how to make it, with the uses thereof,
a most excellent and cheap Medicine.*

Those poor Country people who cannot go to the charge of dearer Phylick for the cure of their Horses distemper, may make use of this following receipt, and may for ought I know receive as much benefit thereby as by a Medicine tending to the same purpose six times the price; and thus it is made: take half a pound of Anniseeds, and the like quantity of English Liquorish, also half a pound of Grains, and the like proportion of Fen-nel seeds, likewise half a pound of the Flower of Brimstone, and a pound of dried Enula Campa-
na;

na; slice the Liquorish, and dry it, and so pound them all together in a Mortar very small.

An Ounce of this Horse spice with a Spoonful of Sallet-Oyl, and two Spoonfuls of Jean Treacle, and all put together into a quart of strong Beer, is an excellent Drink for a Cold, to make an Horse thrive, and an Antidote against most Diseases.

If upon letting blood you would give your Horse a Drink, take an Ounce of this spice in a pint of strong Beer, and making it luke-warm, give it him to drink fasting.

Hide-bound.

This Distemper commonly proceedeth from unreasonable Travail, disorderly Diet, and multiplicity of Surfeits. It is easily discernable by a general Consumption of the flesh, as leanness, so that you cannot pluck with your fingers his skin from the flesh: he will likewise be disaffected to his meat.

You must in the effecting of a cure first let him blood, and then let him drink five mornings together a quart of new Milk with two Spoonfuls of Honey, and one Spoonful of course Treacle; let his meat be either Barley boiled, warm Grains, or Beans, and his drink Mash.

Hayr, how to make it grow speedily.

Take the new Dung of a Goat, ordinary Honey, Allom powdered, and the blood of an Hog, seeth these together, and what places in the horse you see destitute of hair, rub them herewith every day, this will restore hair wonderfully.

Now since it often happeneth that either by
reason

reason of a dry Mange, or some evil humours resorting to those parts, the hair of both Main and Tail do often shed and fall away, it is requisite that we here prescribe a remedy; and to that end, first, take blood from the Neck-Vein, then slit the skin of the inward part of the Tail (if both are affected with one Distemper, viz. the shedding of the hair) next to the Tuel, from the buttocks to the fourth joint, and there with your Cornet you shall find a hard Gristle, raise it up therewith, and take it forth; having so done, fill up the cavity with Salt finely beaten, and then with an hot Iron steeped in Buck-ly, burn the Tail in sundry places, and then anoint the places with Hogs grease till they be whole: this hath been found true by the experience of several.

Headach.

It is commonly observed among Horses as well as humane Creatures, that their heads will ache, and that grievously, rendring them incapable of performing that service which is expected from them; to the intent you may remove this troublesome distemper, first, take blood from him in the mouth, rubbing it with Salt to cause the greater quantity of blood to come from thence; then take a small stick, and wrap about it a linnen cloth; having so done, anoint it well in the Oyl of Bays, and thrust it to and fro his Nostrils, which will open and purge his head; then take the stalks of Garlick broken into small pieces and make a perfume thereof, or you may perfume his head with Frankincense, Storax and Benjamin, grossly beaten, and well mixed

mixed, of each a like quantity; you must this while feed him but sparingly, and exercise him but moderately; this will reduce his head and brain into a quiet disposition.

Heel Scab, or Heels that are scabbed.

Those little scabs that I have often seen growing about an Horses heels, which are more an eye-sore to the master than a trouble to himself, ingender frequently from the laziness of his keeper, and not from malignant humours, and therefore I would advise the groom or hostler to anoint them daily with *Elbow-grease*.

But if these scabs do proceed from some evil humours, and do run, then morning and evening let the Horse be rid up to the belly in water, to the intent they may contract, and then cauterize them near the joints.

The heels of an Horse are sometimes Kibed, and is a kind of Scratches; you must cauterize the middle of the swelling both long and cross wise; that done, take Oxe dung just as it falleth from him, and putting Sallet-Oyl thereunto set it over the fire, and apply it to the kibed heels, and it will cure them.

Heels of an Horse that are troubled with the Mellet.

This Mellet is a dry scab sometimes growing on the one heel and sometimes on the other; but most commonly on the heel of the fore foot, this proceedeth from corrupt blood, or negligence in dressing after travail.

You must cure him thus: having first nearly clipped away the hair, apply this Medicine plasterwise to the Sorrance; take of ordinary Honey

ney half a pint, black sope a quarter of a pound, five spoonfuls of Vinegar, and the quantity of an Hens Egge of Allom unburnt, of Rye flower two spoonfuls, mix these well together, and making a Plaister hereof lay it all over the Sorrhance, thus let it lye six days; at the expiration of which time, wash the whole leg as well as Sorrhance with powdered Beef broth, then rope up his legs with soft Hay wet, and the cure will be perfected.

Honey charge, how made, and for what good, as all sorts of Slips, Dislocations, and for all sorts of Scratches.

This Honey charge I am about to give you an account of, as to the ingredients it is compounded of, is excellent good for any slip or wrench in the shoulder, hip, or other member, for all sorts of Scratches, stiffness of Sinews, hip-shut, dislocation, weariness in travail, discussion of evil humours, and the asswaging all swellings and tumours.

The way of making this Honey charge is thus: take of Wheat Meal two pound, and put a little Wine to it, then mix it well, and put it into a Kettle, then adde thereunto half a pound of the powder of Bole Armoniack, of common English Honey one pound, it being on the fire, keep it continually stirring, till it be thoroughly boiled; in the boiling put in half a pound of black Pitch, when almost enough, put in half a pound of ordinary Turpentine, of Oyl de Bay, Cummin, *Althea*, *Sanguis Draconis*, Bay-berries, Fenugreek, and of Linseed Meal, of each two drams; boil all these together again, still stirring them, the better

better to imbody them; this is an excellent charge for any ordinary Sorrances whatsoever.

Hurts in the Shoulder.

If the shoulder of your Horse be hurt, or any other member; then take Oyl de Bay, Dialthea, Fresh Butter, Oyl of Turpentine; of each three Ounces, boil and stir them well together, so that they be well incorporated; then take hereof very hot as much as ever the Horse can indure, and anoint twice or thrice a day the place grieved, and this with moderate exercise will prove a speedy remedy.

Now if the shoulder of the Horse be pinched, as it often hapneth by straining the Horse too young, or by carrying too great a weight; then you must first rowel him, then lay this Plaister over his Breast, Shoulders and Withers.

Take of Pitch and Rozen, of each a pound, of Tar half a pint, boil these together, and when it is indifferent cold, take a woollen Cloth bound to the end of a stick, and dip it into the charge, and daub therewith all the shoulder over, then take Flocks as near as you can of the colour of the Horse, and lay thereon, and once in two days make your Rowels clean, and put them in again; continue thus doing twelve or fourteen days; after this, take out the Rowels, and heal up the wounds with tents of Flax dipt in Turpentine and Hogs grease molten together, renew this once a day till it be whole; you may let him run to grass till he be twice or thrice frost-bitten, and it will be for his future advantage.

The wrench in the shoulder cometh from a slip
either

either abroad or at home, or when an Horse is too suddainly stopt in his career, or by too suddain turning, and sometimes by the stroke of another Horse.

The only sign that I know of is his trailing of his leg upon the ground close after him.

The remedy is this; first, take away three pints of blood at least from his Plat Vein; having saved the blood in a clean vessel, then put thereunto a quart of strong Vinegar, with half a dozen Egges broken, and their shells, and so much Wheat flower as will thicken all the liquor; that done, put thereunto a pound of the powder of Bole-Armoniack, Sanguis-Draconis two Ounces, and mingle them so that the flower may be invisible; take this, and with your hand daub all the shoulder from the Main downward, and betwixt the fore bowels, all against the hair; this done, tye him up to the rack, and let him not lye down all that day, then diet him but sparingly for thirteen days, and refresh the shoulder point with this charge once a day, and after this let him have a months rest at least, and his shoulder will be reduced to the former sound condition.

Such as are of late experience prescribe this method for the cure:

They first let the Horse blood in the Breast-Vein, and then Rowel him from the neather part of the Spade-bone down to the point of the shoulder; having so done, they take a Patten shoe, and set it on the sound foot, and so turn him to graze for a month, not forgetting once in two days to remove the Rowels, and so thrust out the corruption: As soon as they perceive that he go-

eth sound, they take off the Patten shoos, and pull out the Rowels and let him still run at grass, till he have taken a frost or two.

I cannot discommend this method, for I have made trial thereof with very good success: I shall speak no further of hurts in the shoulder in this particular place, because I reserve them for another more proper.

Heat in the Lips, and Mouth of an Horse.

There is a certain unnatural and violent heat in the stomach, which ascending, doth frequently breed Cankers, at least an inflammation of the mouth and lips, causing in them a burning and swelling with so much anguish and pain, that the Horse will utterly decline his food.

The cure is facile and easie, for you need do no more than turn up that lip which is most swelled, and jag it so that it may bleed, then wash his lips, mouth and tongue with Salt and Vinegar.

Hidden griefs in an Horse how to discover, for want of the knowledge whereof several pretended crafty Jockeys have been deceived and cheated.

Some Horses are of that nature, that if moderately ridden they will conceal their infirmities, going very seemingly sound, partly by being of a strong constitution, and by being long at grass wear out their distempers, and partly again out of a certain awe most Horses have to their Riders, whereas these very Horses may be unperfect and unsound.

Now that you may not be mistaken and abused herein, first take the Horse out of the stable in a long string, causing one to run him in his hand

the

the length of the halter; especially observe how he sets down his legs, whatever leg is defective, that leg to be sure he will endeavour to favour; if he favour none, but go upright, then mount him, and ride him roundly in some rode; after this alight, and let him stand still an hour or better, then run him again in your hand at the halters length, and then assure your self if he have the least grief he should not be able to conceal it.

If you find him infirm you shall know thus whence his grief proceeds; if from an hot cause, then the Horse halteth most when he is much exercised or travailed; if from a cold cause, then he halteth most when he hath stood still a while.

Hipped Horse, or an Horse that is hurt in his Hips.

An hipped Horse is so properly called, when the hip-bone is dislocated, or removed out of its natural seat or place. This Malady is as difficultly cured as any whatsoever; for if it be not instantly taken immediately after the dislocation, there will grow in the pot of the huckle bone a callous, or hard substance, that it will exclude the bone absolutely from ever possessing its natural habitation, and so the Sortance becomes incurable.

The symptoms of this Sortance are halting much, and going sidelong, trailing his legs somewhat after him, the grieved hip will be somewhat lower than the other, and the flesh will fall away from his Buttock.

You must work his cure thus: first cast him

on his back, and then having a strong Pastern on his grieved leg, with a rope draw that leg upright, and with your hands on each side his thigh bone guide it into the pot; that done, let him down gently, and raise him up with as little stirring or disturbance to him as you can, and so lead him softly into the stable; after this, charge all his hip and back with Rozen and Pitch molten together, and laid on warm, and upon that some Flocks of the colour of his own hair, and so turn him to grass.

If there be no dislocation, but only a hurt in the hip, and that newly, then take of Oyl *de Bay*, of Dialthea, of Nerve Oyl, and of Swines grease, of each half a pound; melt them all together, stirring them till they are thoroughly incorporated, then anoint the Sorrance therewith against the hair, every day once for fourteen days, and that it may well sink in, hold an hot bar of Iron over the place you anoint, waving your hand to and fro, and this will soon cure him.

Hough-Bonny.

Hough-Bonny is a round swelling growing on the very Elbow of the hoof, and proceedeth from a bruise by beating his hoof against the post which standeth behind him, or otherwise.

The remedy must be by taking a round Iron somewhat sharp at the end, like a big Bodkin, and let it be somewhat bending at the point, then holding the sore with your left hand, pulling it a little from the sinew, pierce it with the Iron made red hot, thrusting it beneath in the bottom and so upward into the jelly; having thrust out all the jelly, tent the hole with Flax dipt in Turpentine and

and Hogs-grease molten together, and also anoint the outside with warm Hogs-grease; doing this every day, making the tent lesser and lesser, till the Sorrance be cured.

Though this may be looked on as none of the meanest remedies for this distemper, yet it comes far short of this following, which frequently I have experimented successfully.

First, take Hay boiled in old Urine, and so bring the swelling to suppuration, or discuss it if you can; but if it comes to putrefaction, then lance it in the lowest part of the swelling or softness with a thin hot Iron, and so let out the matter; then tent it with Turpentine, Deersuet and Wax of each a like quantity molten together, and be sure that you lay a Plaister over of the same, that you may keep in the Tent till it be perfectly cured.

Haltings of all sorts, coming either by stroke, strain or the like, with their Cures.

For an Horse to halt is so common a thing, that no Traveller but is very well acquainted with the trouble thereof; if the malady be so well known, there are few, I think, should be ignorant of the Cures, which I shall orderly set down.

If the Halt proceed from stiffness of Sinews, strain or stroke, and that the malady lie in his leg; then take Smallage, Oxe-eye and Sheep-suet of each a quantity alike; chop them all together and boil them all in man's Urine, and bathe the whole leg therewith; then with Hay-ropes wet in cold water rowl up his leg, and you shall find him the next morning in a very good posture.

214 The Cures of all Outward

sture, either to begin or continue his journey.

Another as good as the former.

Take Nerve-oil, Oil de Bay and *Aqua vite*; mingle these together, then warm it; having so done, take it and chafe it in, upon and about the strain; this will remove the pain.

If the grief be in the shoulder or hinder-leg, then burn it upon the very joint, by taking up the skin with a pair of Pincers, and thrust the skin through with an hot Iron overthwart; if you find this do him but little good, then you may conclude his pain to be between the skin and the bone, which then must be Rowelled.

Another for a strain or swelling, according to the practice of the most experienced Farriers now living.

Take a pint of the best Vinegar, of sweet Butter four ounces, and set them over the fire; then with fine Wheat-bran make it into a Pultels over the fire, and lay it as hot to the Sorrance as the Horse is able to endure it; do thus morning and evening, and it is excellent good to assuage any strain newly taken.

But if the strain be of some standing; then take Mallows and Chickweed, and boil them in strong Urine, and so lay them very hot to the strain. Now if your strain, by length of time, or abused by Medicines, seem to the eye of all understanding men incurable, the sinews and swelling being bony, hard, and knotted; then take Piece-grease, and melting it on the fire, anoint and bathe the strain therewith very hot, chafing it very much with your hand, and afterwards

wards holding a broad bar of Iron hot against it, to make the Ointment the better sink in; then with a fine linnen Rowler, rowl up the leg softly; continue thus doing once a day, and there is no strain, how great soever and desperate, but it will remedy in a little time.

Helps for all Sores and Ulcers.

Old Sores or Ulcers have a threefold distinction: the first are Fistula's, being Sores which are deep, hollow and crooked: the second are Cankers; this Sorrhance is known by its shape, which is broad and shallow, and by its nature spreading and increasing: the last are old Sores or Ulcers, which are differenced from the two former, by being deep, black about the sides and bottom, neither increasing nor healing.

The causes are either bruise, wound or impostume abused in the cure; or else the cause may arise from the negligence or unskilfulness of the Farrier, suffering ill humours to flow down into those parts.

The signs are (according to Mr. Markham's judgment) the long continuance of the Sore, the blackness thereof with inflammation, and the thinness of the matter flowing from it.

Observe this in the Cure; first mundifie or cleanse the sore well with white Wine; then take Lilly-leaves and Copperas, and beat them well in a Mortar with Swines-grease till they turn to a Salve; then with flax lay it on the Sorrhance, covering it also with a Plaister, as in the cure of wounds, and it will speedily be a Cure; this must be renewed once a day.

But as for an old Ulcer in particular, I never

found any thing by experience better than this ; Take Frankincense, Mastick, Cloves, green Copperas and Brimstone of each a like quantity, twice as much Myrrh as any of the former ; beat it into powder, and burn it on a Chafing-dish and coals, but let it not flame ; as the smoak ariseth, take an handful of Lint, and hold it over the smoak, so that it may receive the fume thereof into it ; then close this Lint in a Box, and keep it.

It is to be supposed that this Lint (or you may use fine Hurds instead thereof) is thoroughly persumed ; and observe before you use it, purifie and wash well with Urine, or Vinegar either, made warm, the sore, and then having dried it, lay on some of these Hurds or Lint, continuing so doing twice a day ; take this from experience to be a speedy and never failing Cure,

Ives.

The Ives grow in a rowl betwixt the hinder part of his Jaw-bone and his Neck; if they should chance to reach the roots of his ears the Horse is in a dangerous condition.

If you will work a Cure, you must first let him blood in both the Neck-veins ; having thus done take Vinegar, Pepper and Hogs grease of each a like quantity ; having wrought them well together, divide it into two equal portions, putting the one part into one ear and the residue into the other ; then clap in after it wool or flax to keep it in, and then stitch up his ears close with a needle and thread, for a day and a night. In the time of the Cure let him stand in the house.

Inflam.

Inflammations, Pustuls and Kernels under the Chawls of an Horse.

These inflammations have most commonly their rise and original from either cold or Glanders, which must be dissolved or discussed, or the Horse will never be sound; to this purpose therefore take two handfulls of Wheat-bran, a quart of Beer or Ale, or so much as will thicken it; then add to these Hogs-grease half a pound; boil these together till the liquor be quite consumed; then take thereof and lay it to the place as hot as it can be endured, doing thus every day so long, till it hath either broke the swelling, or softened it in such manner as that it is in a fit condition to be opened; having cleansed it from its filth and putrefaction, then tent it with flax dipped in this Salve following:

Take of Turpentine and Hogs-grease of each a like quantity, of Rozin or Wax somewhat more; melt all these together and your Salve is made; put hereof into and upon the wound once a day till it be whole.

Inflammations in Horses Eyes.

These inflammations happen often by an Horses long standing in a Stable, whereby motes fall into his eyes; or they may come by foul feeding and no exercise, or by corrupt or rank blood.

The signs are plain; the Cure must then follow: first phlebotomize him on the Temple-veins, and upon the Eye-veins, and then wash his Eyes with Milk and Honey mixt together; or you may wash his Eyes, after you have bled him, with Milk and Aloes Hepatica.

Im-

Impostumation in general how to ripen.

If any swelling doth impostumate you shall discern it by the heat, for if you lay your hand thereon, you will feel it burn exceedingly; when you have discovered the nature of the malady, your next care must be to ripen it, so that it may be fit to be opened; for that purpose take Mal-low-roots, and white Lilly-root of each a like quantity; bruise them and put unto them Hogs-grease and Linseed-meal; boil these till they are soft, and then lay them in manner of a Plaister to the Swelling.

Before I give you any more receipts for the ripening or softning an Impostume, give me leave to tell you first what an Impostume is; which may be thus defined.

It is a gathering or knitting together of many and most corrupt humours in any part or member of the body, making that part to swell extremely, and growing into such violent inflammation, that in the end, they rot and break out into foul, mattery and running sores, having their original, either from corruption of food or corruption of blood.

Now let me proceed to give you a farther account of what will ripen them.

Some take Swines-grease, red Wax and the flower of Euphorbium, and mixing them well on the fire lay it to the Impostume.

Others say this is better, to take two handfuls of Sorrel, and lapping it in a Dock-leaf, roast it in the hot embers, and so lay it very hot to the Impostume, renewing it once a day.

But in my opinion this is best: Take of *Sanguis*

Guis Draconis, of Gum Arabick, of new Wax, of Mastick, of Pitch of Greece, of Incense and of Turpentine, of each a like quantity; melt these together, and having strained them, make a Plaister thereof, and lay it to the Impostume, and this will both ripen, break and heal it; so much in general.

Now you are to understand there are two sorts of Impostumes, the one hot, and the other cold.

If the Impostume hath its original from any hot cause, as extraordinary travel, or inflamed blood; then, according to the judgment of the most knowing, take Liverwort and stamp it, and mingle it with the grounds of Ale, Hogs-grease and Mallows bruised. Or you may take Lettice-seed or Poppy-seed, and mix it with the Oyl of red Roses, and lay it on the Sore plaister-wise, if it be done at the beginning of the swelling, it will take it clean away.

But if the Impostume be engendered by any cold cause, then take Balm and Hogs-grease, and stamp them well together, and apply it as aforesaid.

Or open the Impostume in the lowest part, with a hot Iron; then wash it with warm Urine, after that anoint it with Tar and Oil well mixt together; Note by the way; if you make your Incision in the form or manner of an half-Moon, it will be more advantagious for your purpose.

Or Lastly, take an handful of Rew, and stamp it well with the yolks of Eggs and Honey, and applying it Plaister wise, it will cure any old Impostume.

Itch

The Cures of all Outward

Itch in the Tail of an Horse.

Corrupt blood, rank feeding, or over-heating do cause this Maunge in the Tail; yet not always, for sometimes it is occasioned by Truncheon-worms in the Fundament, which are bred there in the Spring, which will cause them frequently to rub their Tails; in this case you need do no more than anoint your hand with Butter or Soap, and pull out the Worms, and the cure is effected.

But if you find the Tail grow bare, by reason of shedding the Hair, which is occasioned by some small worms which grow at the root thereof, or otherwise by some small fretting Scab; then anoint his Tail throughout with Soap, and after wash it with strong Lye: this will both cleanse him from the Scab, and kill the Worms,

Sometimes there will grow a Canker in the Tail, which by degrees will eat, not only the flesh, but seize on the bone; so that it shall drop joint by joint: against this Malady you must take this course: Take of green Copperas and Alom of each two pound, of white Copperas half a pound; boil these in five quarts of running water, in a strong earthen pot, till one half be consumed; then with a little of this water lukewarm wash his Tail every day once, with a little Flax bound to a stick, and it will quickly be well.

Interfering.

Interfering or Enterfering signify both one and the same thing; this infirmity comes sometimes naturally, the pace being very strait, or sometimes by broad shooing, so that in his going he heweth

heweth one leg against the other, whence come hard scabs, and very mattery sore, causing the Horse to halt down-right.

The Cure is thus; Take of May-butter, or fresh Grease, and mingle it with Nerve-oil and Turpentine; fry these in a pan, and then add Cow-dung and apply it Plaister-wise.

You need not trouble your self about the cure hereof, if your prudence and discretion would look after his shoeing, so that he might go so wide as not to touch.

However, if you will play the Horse-courser, you may take a sharp and knotted Cord, and draw it from his Dock, between his legs, to the Girths, and so ride him.

Joints grieved with any Ach, Numness, Weakness or Swelling whatsoever which proceeds from a cold Cause.

The causes of this Ach, Numness and Swelling, are either a strain or a cold, taken by violent exercise, labour or immoderate riding.

The Signs or Symptoms are so visible to the Eye, they need no description.

The Cure is: Take *Aqua vite*, and warm it on the fire; then take it and bathe the part grieved, and rub it very well, holding before it a broad flat hot Iron, which will cause the spirit to sink in the better; then take a rag or piece of Flax, and dip it in the *Aqua vite*; then take Pepper, and having beaten it well, sierce it in a fine sierce, and lay it on the rag or flax, and bind it to the grieved member; then swathe it well with a Linnen Rowler; do thus once a day, and this will soon recover him.

There

The Cures of all Outward

There are others, who take Acopum and mingle it with sweet Sack, and therewith rub and chafe the grieved joint; this is an excellent Medicine, though not altogether so good as the former.

Increase of an Hoof lost or torn by some accident.

If your Horse hath lost his Hoof, or if it be any ways impaired; then take the Oil of Hemp-seed, of Wax, of Venice Turpentine, Rozin, Pitch, Bay-seeds, dried and powdred, of each half a pound, Roch-alom two ounces; incorporate these well together, and let them seeth over a soft fire; having thus boiled some little space, take it off and strain it through an hair cloth; thus you may preserve it till you have occasion to make use thereof.

Once or twice a day take of this Unguent, and anoint the Hoofs of your Horse, and this will make them grow exceedingly, and so sound, as that hereafter they will not prove brittle.

Knots or Knobs how to remove.

If you perceive that your Horse hath growing on any part of his body any unnatural Knot or Knob, which by Artits are called Excretions, caused by putrified blood, or by wounds not well healed, which Excretions are not only perspicuous to the Eye, but plainly felt by the hand, I say, in such a case you must endeavour to remove them with all expedition, which may be done thus.

Take an Incision-Knife and scarifie those Excretions, then lay thereon Coloquintida burned and sifted; having eaten away this Knob or Knot,
then

then heal it up with some drying Medicines, as Honey, Lime or Bole armoniack.

Or take the strongest sort of *Ægyptiacum*, and with Cotton lay it thereon, and in four or five times doing it will utterly destroy or eat away the Excretion.

Kernels under an Horses throat how to discuss, suddenly, safely and with little Expence.

In the first place you must take a lighted Candle and therewith sear the Kernels; then take Butter, it matters not whether fresh or salt, and lay a piece thereof on a red cloth, and rub it well in therewith, and in less than fourteen dayes the Knots will vanish; and if the Nose run by reason of them, it will stop as soon as they are gone.

During the Cure, if it be in Winter, he must be kept warm in the Stable, otherwise he may run at grass; but neglect not to anoint his Knobs or Kernels once a day at least.

Or you may take Soap and mingle it with Brandy-wine, and having a red hot Iron in readiness, hold it somewhat near the part, as you apply the Soap and Brandy-wine, to make it sink in the better; this Medicine will suddenly bring them down or break them.

Now if your aforesaid Knobs be of a long standing, and be extremely hard, then in this manner you must work the Cure.

Take an ounce and an half of the Oil of Turpentine, and joyn thereto the like quantity of strong Beer; put these into a glass, and so shake them that they be well mingled together; with this bathe the Knob, clapping it in well with
your

your hand, and using an hot Iron to make it sink in the more ; four days after apply the charge of Soap and Brandy-wine ; Five or six days after you may ride him whither you please.

Knees broken, of a long standing, perfectly cured.

If your Horse have old broken Knees, much swelled and hard, and have been a good while healed up, only take the Oil of Worms and anoint the places grieved, for this is a great mollifier of any hard and bony part ; if this answer not your expectation, then may you use the aforesaid Remedy, which I prescribed for hard Knobs of a long continuance.

Legs that are swelled how to cure.

As to the swelling of an Horse's Legs, you must consider whether it be before or behind ; if in his forelegs, then the cause hereof was some over violent labour, by reason he was fat, and the Grease, which was melted, fell down in his forelegs, which, had it staid within, and not fallen outwardly, would have ingendered an Anticor, or some other distemper which would have indanger'd his life.

The signs are palpable to the eye, viz. a rising of the flesh or swelling ; and therefore in the first place, it would not be amiss to anoint it with Acopum.

The Cure is, to take of Pitch and Virgins-wax, of each three ounces, of Rozin half a pound, of the juice of Hysop and of Galbanum of each half an ounce, and of Mirrah-secondary half a pound, Bdellium Arabicum, Populeon and the drops of Storax of each half an ounce, and of Deer-suet half a pound ; boil these together in an earthen pot

pot, & when it is cold take Bitumen half a pound, Bole-armoniack and of Costus of each one ounce and a half; make all these into fine powder, then mingle them with the former boiled Ingredients, and boil them over again very well; then take it off the fire, and pour this commixture into cold Water, and afterwards make it into rowls, like ordinary Salves.

When you have occasion to make use of this Salve, spread hereof on Leather, proportioning the piece, so that it may cover the swelling all over, and so lay it on; this will not only assuage the swelling, but corroborate the Nerves and Sinews; let it stick on as long as it can: If this will not do, I know not what will, having tried this medicine often, and having always found it to work its cure, in bringing a swoln horses Leg to its pristine smalness, when all other applications proved ineffectual.

The French take this course for Legs that are troubled with swellings.

They take a piece of strong Woollen cloth, very coarse, and thereof make an Hose to the shape of his Leg, a pretty deal larger; so that it may reach from the lower part of his Pastern up to the Cambrel, making it strait at the Pastern, but wide above at the Knee; they then take a pottle of Wine-lees (Beer-lees will serve) and boil them well; then put to them a pound of clarified Hogs-grease, when melted and well stirred together, adding thereunto as much Wheat-bran as will thicken it, reducing it to the body of a Pulstels, as hot as the Horse can suffer it; having filled the hose or hosen herewith, they then

Q

close

226 The Cures of all Outward

close it atop : thus letting him stand two days, and on the third they open the hose at the top, and pour therein molten Hogs-grease, very hot, as much as it will hold, because they say this will renew the Pulses; then close up the hose again, and let him stand three days more; after this, having rubbed the Horses leg down very well, if they find the swelling is not quite gone, they will let him stand other two days, otherwise the Cure is effected.

Now the hinder legs of an Horse are occasioned to swell many times by the unevenness of his standing, the floor being higher before than behind; or else by setting up the Horse in the Stable too hot, and then taking cold, the blood, grease and humours fall down into his hinder legs.

For this I shall propound a cheap Cure: Take Train-oil and warm it on the fire, and therewith twice a day, that is morning and evening, anoint his Legs; but if there happen to be a stiffness with the swelling, then take Violet-leaves, Strawberry-leaves and Primrose-leaves of each an handful; boil all these in new milk till they become very soft; then taking it off the fire, add thereunto of the Oil of Nerval, of Petroleum and of Pamphillion of each an ounce; stir these together till they become blood-warm, and herewith anoint the Legs, Nerves, sinews and Joints of the Horse six or seven days, chafing and rubbing in this Ointment very well, and you shall work the Cure in a little time.

Leprosie.

Leprosie.

The Leprosie is a moist maunge proceeding from very great surfeits occasioned by immoderate riding, and is a disease not only dangerous to the afflicted, but infectious to other Horses that shall come near the thus diseased Horse.

You need not much enquire into the Symptoms of this distemper, being so visible to the eye, but rather look after the Cure of a disease so dangerous and infectious.

The cure must be effected first by bleeding him in the Neck, then take an old Card or Curry-comb, and scrape away the scurf, so that the sores look raw and bloody, then tie him up to the Rack so high that he may not be able to bite, rub or lick himself; then anoint him with this Ointment following: take Arsnick or Resolgar and Hogs grease tryed, the aforesaid ingredient being first beaten into fine powder, mingle these well together, and thereof make an Ointment; and that your Ointment may sink in the better, hold a hot bar of Iron near the Horse when you anoint him; having so done, be sure you wash away clean this Ointment, so that none remain, with the strongest Chamber Lye you can get; after this, untye him, and give him meat as formerly; thus you must do once every day till he be perfectly cured.

Or you may use this remedy, which is not only good for a Leprosie, but also any Farcy, Scab, or Maunge in any part of the body: first, let him bleed in the Neck, then take half a pound of Tobacco, and infuse it in a quart of old stale Urine, and then put it over a soft or slow fire, so

228 The Cures of all Outward

that it may only simmer, and thus let it stand a whole night, then may you herewith wash the part grieved, and this will prove a very certain remedy.

Or you may use this means for the cure aforesaid, which doth both draw, heal and make the hair to grow.

Take a quart of Tar, and set it on the fire, then add to it half a pound of Bores grease, an Ounce of Copperas, a quarter of a pound of Rozen, two Ounces of Verdigrease, a quart of Linseed Oyl, a quarter of a pound of Salt peter, two Ounces of Wax, a quart of Honey, boil all these together till half be consumed; then strain it, and keep it in a pot for your use.

When at any time you have occasion to make use of this Ointment, you must take thereof, and making it warm, anoint therewith the Sorrance: you shall not need to use it often before you shall make a perfect cure.

If the Leprosie be universal, then first open his Neck Vein, and draw good store of blood from thence, then with an Oyfter shell, Harecloth, or some such like course thing curry off the scurf, then take of Verdigrease and Vinegar, Cow-piss, Train-Oyl, and old Urine, of each a pint, adding to them an handful of wild Tanfie, and an handful of Bay-salt, a quarter of a pound of Brimstone, and as much Allom, two Ounces of Verdigrease, and four Ounces of Bole Armoniack, boil all these well together, and it will not be amiss to put thereto a pint of that blood you took from him: wash the Horse herewith very well, making it very hot when you apply it to the

the Sorrance; this will cause a cure in four or five times so doing.

Lice in an Horse, how to kill them, or free him from them.

For Lice to afflict Horses in great quantities is as common as to have them in childrens heads, especially if the Horse run in the Winter time in Coppices, and among Trees where the drops continually fall from the Trees upon his back; these drops with his own poverty will breed them infinitely; as long as he is troubled with these Lice, which are very like Geese Lice, which breed principally about the Ears, Neck, Main, Tail, and will spread over all the body; I say, as long as they infest him, so long will he be low, and in a languishing condition.

The signs are, an Horse will be always scrubbing, scratching or rubbing himself against walls, posts or doors, or any thing else that will serve for that purpose, fretting away thereby the hair of his Mane and Tail; when the Sun shines you will find them perching on the top of his hair, and now although he should eat never so much, he will neither thrive nor prosper.

To cure him of this Itch, and free him from these Vermine, you must take Staves-acre and boil it in running water, and wash him all over herewith, and it will destroy them.

Or take Soap and Quicksilver, or soft grease and Quicksilver, and beat them together till the Quicksilver be killed, and anoint the Horse all over therewith, and it will destroy the Lice instantly.

Or take Tobacco, and shred it very small, and

with Alom powdered put it into small Beer, and when the Alom is dissolved, wash him herewith; this is an excellent and speedy Remedy.

Some say that Hogs-grease alone, anointing the Mane and Ridge-bone of the back, will instantly burst them; But this (to conclude) I have tried with desired success; that is, take a broad woollen Lint, as broad as your hand, that will go round about his Neck; then wet or dip the Lint in Train-oil, sow it about his neck; this will cause the Lice to gather to it, which will kill them as fast as they come; you may daub some hereof about other parts of his body to save them from a greater march, and it will destroy them in like manner; nay this will also keep flies in Summer-time from Sores; and this is not only good for an Horse alone, but for any other sort of Cattle.

Lampas.

The Lampas is a swelling or growing up of the flesh, over-growing the upper Teeth which are the shearers in the upper Chap, which said swelling is a very great impediment to his feeding. It commonly proceedeth from abundance of rank blood, resorting to the first Furrow or Bar of the mouth.

The Symptoms of this distemper are very visible to the eye, and therefore need no further remonstrance.

You must cure him after this manner; Take an Onion and roast it, and being very hot, put it upon a cloth, and with it rub the Lampas very much; this must be done thrice a day till the Lampas be cured.

Now

Now the Farriers, in former time, used to prick the swelling in divers places, making it bleed, and then with a Bistory (as the French call it) which is an Iron at one end broad, thin and a little turned up, and heating it red hot, were wont to burn out all that superfluous flesh which over-grewed the fore teeth, anointing the fore place with Butter till it was well, or wash it only with Salt and Vinegar.

I would not have this Cure sleighted for its antiquity, neither is it by the most discreet and experienced Farriers of our times : Now if you find, through too much burning, or eating of very course meat, that the fore healeth not, but rather begins to rankle ; then take three Spoonfuls of Honey, and twelve Pepper-corns, pounding them in a Mortar small, and mixing them with the Honey, tempering them up with Vinegar and afterwards boil them together ; with this anoint the fore place, and it will soon be whole.

Lean Horses how to make fat in a little time.

I can assure you, from my own experience, that by this following Receipt I have often fatned, in a short time, Horses so lean that their bones have been ready to start through their skin, and have afterward grown so fat, that I have been forced to use medicaments for the prevention of its further encrease : thus you must do :

Take Enula-campana dried, Cummin, Turmeric, Anniseeds of each two ounces, Groundfel about half an handful ; then take three heads of Garlick pick'd, and boil these very well together in a gallon of strong Ale ; after this strain it, and

every morning give him a quart thereof to drink blood-warm, as long as it lasteth; then ride him moderately, but not so as to cause him to sweat; after four mornings are expired, turn him to grass, if the season will permit; if not, keep him in the Stable, and you shall find him feed lustily, and improve suddenly; but you must still observe to give him warm Mashcs, seasonable Airing, and moderate Exercise.

Lave-ear'd Horse how to remedy.

To have an Horse Lave-ear'd is as great a deformity to him as can happen; and although the Farriers of these times have not made it their endeavour to reform so foul a deformity; yet it is more their fault by ignorance or negligence, than any impossibility of helping this natural infirmity, which hath its original from the very conception.

I must acknowledge my self to be somewhat beholding to Mr. *Markham* for the Cure of this deformity; which must be effected in this manner.

In the first place take your Horses ears, and so place them as you would have them stand hereafter; then take a thin Trencher, and slice two pieces thereof as broad as three fingers, having fastned long strings thereunto; with these bind the ears so fast, as you have placed them, that no motion shall stir or displace them from that form; then shall you see some empty wrinkled skin, between the head and the root of the ear, which you must pull up with your finger and thumb, and with your Scissers clip away the empty skin by the head; after this, with a needle
and

and red silk, stitch the two sides of the skin together very close; then make a Salve of Turpentine, Deer-suet and Honey, taking of these an equal quantity, which must be melted together, and with this Salve or Ointment you must heal the sore; then may you take away the pieces of Trencher, and the ears will ever alter, without any alteration, keep that posture you designed them.

Moon-eyed.

To be Moon-eyed is as bad a thing as an Horse can be troubled with, being not only noisom but dangerous: this distemper commonly proceeds from forcing an Horse to do that he is incapable of performing; as if he be dull and lazie, to make him trot or gallop beyond his strength or vigour; or, if over-free, to give him too much freedom, according to the Proverb, *a man may soon run a free Horse to death.*

I know no other reason why they call this malady Moon-eyed, but that sometimes in the month he will see indifferently, and sometime not at all.

The Remedy is to take a Plaister of Pitch, Rozin and Mastich, and lay all over the Temples of the Horses head; then with a sharp knife or Lancet make a slit under each of his eyes, about four fingers beneath, and let each slit be an inch long; then with a Cornet loosen the skin, about the breadth of a groat, and thrust therein a round piece of Leather, with an hole in the midst; see that the matter run at least eight days, looking to it every day; after this
remove

234. The Cures of all Outward

remove the Leather, and heal up the wound with flax dipt in this Ointment, made of Honey, Wax and Turpentine of each a like quantity dissolved together, but let it be only warm when you dip your flax therein: let the Plaisters on his Temples fall off of their own accord; being fallen off, make a Star in the midst of each Temple-vein with your hot drawing Iron.

Malender, Low-worm or Shingles, being much alike.

This Malender or Low-worm, is so like St. *Anthouie*'s-fire or the Shingles, that I hardly think it distinguishable from either. It is caused (according to the opinion of the most judicious) by a Worm that breedeth in the Back-bone, betwixt the bone and skin, which extendeth it self along the breast to the Brain; but as soon as it comes to touch the pannicle thereof, the Horse will immediately fall into extreme madness and frenzie, and hardly reducible.

The Symptoms of this Disease are, first he will bend down his back and make many proffers to stale, but cannot; and when he doth piss, it will be but very little at a time, and that in his sheath too: a little after this he will fall distracted, not only gnawing the Manger, or what is next him; but will also bite and strike at all that comes near him.

This disease is called by the French *Ver-Coguin*, by the Italians *Vermiform*, who absolutely hold that this worm which is the cause of this distemper can be no ways destroyed but by fire; but our English Farriers know to the contrary, as for example, this ensuing Receipt is an infallible remedy.

Take

Take of Acrement a quarter of a pound, fix heads of Garlick clean pilled, of Rue and Tormentile (bearing a yellow flower) of each one pound, stamp these in a stone Mortar, and put thereto as much White-Wine as will with the juice make a pottle; before you give your Horse any of this liquor, let him bleed very well from his Tail; having stancht the blood, give a sixth part of the aforesaid liquor, and so continue doing every morning till all the liquor be spent. This is an approved cure.

The French cure is by taking an Iron with a Button at one end, and making it red hot, they burn the Horse on the fore-head, under his fore-top, and on the fore-top, and four other in the Neck, clean though upon the Crest, two of the holes must be on the one side of the Crest, and two on the other, putting into every hole to extinguish the fire *Unguentum Rosarum*; after this they let him bleed in the Neck-Vein, and this they say is an infallible remedy.

Maunginess in the Main.

Main Maunginess, with shedding of the hair, happens either by Lice, rankness of Blood, or else sometimes by scrubbing against that Post some other maungy Horse hath rubbed.

The best and speediest way of curing this Maunge is to take two pound of fresh grease, one Ounce of Quick-silver, and the like of Brimstone, of Rape Oyl half a pint, mingle these together, stirring them so with a stick or slice till the Quick-silver is undiscoverable; then take an old Curry-comb, and scratch away the scurf so that the part become both raw and bloody, then anoint the

the places herewith, holding a broad hot Iron against them to make the Ointment to sink in; this in four or five days will cure him.

This disease is called by the French the Elephantick Malady, because they say the Elephants are much troubled herewith. You are to understand that the Maunge is infectious, and therefore as soon as ever you perceive it in one Horse, remove him from all other, to the intent you may prevent the infecting of others.

Our late Farriers have this Receipt in great esteem: Take of Orpin one pound, Brimstone and Eupherbium, of each one Ounce, Cantharides twenty five; make all these into fine powder, and with Hogs grease make it into an Ointment; apply this to all the maungy places, rubbing it well in; after this anointing (six days after) anoint him with Hogs grease only; when you find the scurf to fall off, wash the Neck and other parts with Buck Lye made blood warm.

For Maunginess in general, take a Gallon of strong Ale, and a pound of Tobacco stalks, half a pound of Allom, a pint of Salt, one penny worth of Mercury; boil these together till one half be consumed; then first, let him blood, and afterwards wash him herewith.

Now if it be a dry inward Maunge, you will know it by his hair coming off in plats, scaling off sometimes from head to tail, leaving a dry scurfie Maunge; this Malady proceedeth from an extraordinary heat of the blood; now in this case his body being inwardly afflicted with this Maunge, give him this drink: take one Ounce of the flower of Brimstone, two Ounces of Rozen beaten

beaten small; one Ounce of Turmeric powdred, one Ounce of Anniseeds pounded in a Mortar; put all these into a quart of strong Beer made blood warm, and so give it him in a horn falling; after this tye him up to the rack five hours, then give him warm water and bran, and at night bursten Oats: the next day strow two spoonfuls of Rozen powdred among his Provender, the like the next night, and the same quantity the next day, and you need not doubt of a cure.

Mouth-fore.

If the mouth of your Horse be fore, and that it proceedeth from corruption of blood, or cold, causing the palate of the Mouth to be inflamed, and look red, falling from the palate into the chaps in such a manner, as when he hath opened them, he will be unable to shut them again, in this case I advise you first, to let forth the corrupt blood, then take Verjuice and Bay salt, *quantum sufficit*, and warm it on the fire, then with Flax dipt therein wash his mouth and tongue three or four times a day.

But if it be fallen into his chaps, which you shall know by his yawning and gaping, then take only Verjuice of the Crab, and make it luke warm, then tye a rag to a stick, and wash his mouth therewith very well, helping him to close up his mouth with your hand.

Mellet.

A Mellet is a dry scab that groweth on the heel, sometimes proceeding from corruption of blood, but more commonly for want of Elbow-grease in rubbing him clean, and dressing him after he is set up wet: this Malady frequently appears like a dry chap.

The

The usual cure is to take a pint of Honey, and of Sope three Ounces, and of White-Wine-Vinegar four or five spoonfuls, as much Allom as an Egge, of Bean or Rye flower two spoonfuls; mix all these together, and apply it to the Mellet as far as it goeth, letting it lye on five or six days; after you have taken it away wash his leg and foot with salt Beef broth, then rope his leg with wet Hay ropes two or three days after, and he will be very sound and well.

Morfounded.

Morfounding is no other than foundring in the body by molten grease, of which I have already treated in that section which discourseth only upon the internal diseases which afflict the bodies of Horses; however give me leave to give you one excellent Receipt more, inferiour to none of the former; and that is this as followeth.

Take an handful of Salt, and put it into a pint of fair water; give him this to drink, then ride him with that moderation that you cause him not to sweat; this done as soon as you suspect him foundred, will work the cure; but if it be of five or six days standing, then take a spoonful of the powder of Hellebore, and of Saffron one penny worth, of Assa foetida and of Soap of *Venice*, of each two dramchs, with a small quantity of the seeds of Bays; mix these, and pound them well together, adding thereto a pint of Vinegar; give him this to drink blood warm; then cloath him well, so that he sweat for an hour; then cool him by degrees, and after that rub him well down, and he will be as well as ever. *Probatum.*

Mules;

Mules, or Kibe heels.

This Sorrance is a certain dry scab or chap, breeding behind on the heels of an Horse, and so a little inward, even to the Fetlock, in long chaps or chinks.

The causes of these Kibed heels are either corrupted blood, negligent keeping, or by being bred in wet and marshy grounds.

The signs are swelling in his legs, most especially in the Winter and Spring time, going stiffly, and halting much.

As to the Cure, you must first take away the scabs, and make the Kybe raw; then with strong Mustard, made with Wine-vinegar, anoint them all over, and do this every night. The next morning take half a pound of green Copperas, and boil it in a pottle of running water with an handful of Sage, and the like quantity of Hyssop, a quarter of a pound of Alom, and as much strong Mustard, and with this bathe the sore twice every day.

Or first, wash his Sorrance clean, then dry it; after that take Linseed Oyl and black Soap of each a like quantity; boil them together till they become a Salve, and herewith anoint the Mules or Kibes.

If these Kibes are not of long standing, take a little Sope and anoint them daily for three or four days, and after that wash them with strong stale Urine, and they would be whole.

But if it be of longer continuance, then calcinate Tartar, and dissolve it into water; then congeal it like Salt, and mingle it with Soap like an Ointment; with this dress the sore; by
so

so doing, in two days and two nights you shall perfectly cure the Kibes, Pains or Scratches whatsoever.

Mallender.

I have before discours'd concerning the Mallender, but it was more properly a disease called the Low-worm; wherefore I shall particularly in this place insist upon the Mallender.

This Malady is a kind of a dry Scab, growing overthwart the inward bent of the Knee, and hath growing thereon stubborn hairs like Swines-bristles, which will corrupt and canker the flesh, causing him to go stiff till he is warmed by travel or exercise.

If you intend a Cure, you must first pull out these bristly hairs; then rub it dry with a cloth; after this anoint it with Crown Sope and red Mercury precipitate mixed together; dress him herewith five several times, intermitting one day betwixt every dressing; then anoint it with Sallet-oil, and you need do no more.

Others think this way better: First wash the sore clean with warm water, then shave off the hair and pick away the scabs; after this take a spoonful of Soap, and as much Lime, mingle them together that it may be like Paste; then spread on a clout as much as will cover the Sore, and bind it fast on with a Lint, renewing it every day once the space of 4 days; at the expiration of which time, take away the Plaister, and take Oil of Roses warmed and anoint the sore therewith, and that will fetch off clearly all the scurf & crusty eschar; having removed this skurf, wash, once a day, the place with man's Urine, strowing the powder of burnt

burnt Oister-shells thereon ; continue thus doing till it be perfectly well.

The latestt way of curing a Mallender is this ; first, with your Scissers clip away the hair that either grows upon or about it ; then take an hair-cloth, or the back of an old Knife, and rub the scabs off, which will cause a yellow matter to run from it ; then take a linnen cloth, and therewith wipe the part very clean ; then take a groats-worth of the Oil of Riggum ^{Organum} and mingle it with *Stercus humanum* ; then lay on this with a flat stick upon a piece of cloth, not woollen, and bind it to the sore, letting it lie on six days ; then cleanse it and dress it once more, and there needs nothing else to perfect the Cure.

Lastly, some only wash and shave the Mallender, and then rub it with Piss and Soap till it be raw ; then lay to it Nerve-oil, Honey and strong Mustard until it be whole.

Where note, that some Horses will have two Mallenders upon one Leg, one above the other, and sometimes one a little above the bending of the Knee, and another a little below the inward bending of the Knee ; but as to the Cure it is all alike, what being good for the one may be applied also to the other.

Mourning of the Chine.

This disease, called the Mourning of the Chine, is also called the moist Malady ; it is supposed by most expert Farriers that this disease is a foul consumption of the Liver ; and this consumption proceeds from a cold, which afterwards turns to a Poze, then to the Glanders, and lastly to the Mourning of the Chine.

242 The Cures of all Outward

The sign is, that corrupt matter which runneth from his Nostrils will be darkish colour, thin and reddish, with little streaks of blood in it.

The Remedy is thus: Take of Auripigmentum two drachms, of Tussilage as much, made into powder; then mix them with Turpentine till they be as thick almost as Dow; then make thereof little Cakes and dry them before the fire; then take a Chafing-dish of Coals, and lay a couple of the Cakes thereon, covering them with a Tunnel; when the smoke ariseth clap the end of the Tunnel into the Horses Nostril, so that the smoke may ascend into his head; after you have so done, ride him till he sweat: do this every morning before watering and he will quickly be cured.

Or else you may use this Remedy: Take clear water and a quart of Hydromel, adding thereto three ounces of Sallet-oyl, and every morning pour it into his Nostrils for the space of four days; if that answer not your desires, then give him every other day a quart of old Wine mingled with *Tetrapharmacum*, to be had in every Apothecaries Shop.

I would have treated more largely on this distemper, but that I have spoken of it already, in that Chapter which contains the Cures of internal Diseases, in that Section which speaks of the Glanders.

Malt-long or Malt-worm.

The Malt-long is a cankerous Malady above the Hoof, just upon the Cronet, which always breaks out into knobs and branches, and from thence

thence will run a sharp watrish humour, which will poison the whole foot.

The signs hereof are visible to the sight, viz. the Sorrhance it self, and the continual issuing of a watrish matter from the same.

The Cure is somewhat different; according to the season of the year: If it be in Summer, take black Snails and Burr-roots and pounding them well together, lay them to the Sorrhance.

If it be in Winter; then take of the inner green bark of the Elder-tree, and mingle therewith the scrapings of the bottom of a Pan or Kettle; beat these together very well in a Mortar, and lay it to the sore, renewing it once a day.

Mollifiers, or what things will mollifie hardness.

Take of Linseed and Fenugreek of each four ounces, of Pitch and Rôzin of each three ounces, of the flowers of Roses two ounces, and Pitch of Greece three ounces, boil these together; then put of Turpentine three ounces, of Honey six ounces, with a small quantity of Sallet-oil, applying this to any hard swelling, and it will speedily mollifie and soften it; so will also these following ingredients.

Malvavisco well boiled and stamp't with *Oleum Rosatum*, and applied hot. Brank Urline and Mallows boiled together, and beaten up with Oil and Lard. Or Malvavisco, Coleworts, Branck Urline, herb of the Wall, and old greafe pounded together. Wheat-meal, Honey, Pellitory, Branck Urline, and the leaves of Wormwood beaten together with Swines-grease. Or

244 The Cures of all Outward

Grease, Mustard seed, and Comin boiled together, and stampt into a Poultice. One Ounce of Soap, and an Ounce and an half of unslackt Lime, and mixt with strong Lye. The juice of the tops of Cypress and dry Figs macerated in Vinegar, of each three Ounces strained, adding thereto one Ounce of Sal-niter, half an Ounce of Armoniack, with a little Aloes and Opoponax, and made into an Ointment will mollifie any hardness whatsoever.

Medicament mundefying and cleansing any Fistula, Ulcer or old Sore whatever.

If your Horse be troubled with any old and foul Sore, before you heal it, anoint it with this Ointment following, and it will sufficiently mundefie and cleanse it.

Take Swines grease clarified, Oyl of Olives, the grease of a young Fox, Turpentine, Allom, and white Wax, boil these well together till they are thoroughly mixed, and dress the Sorrance therewith.

Navel-Gall.

The Navel Gall takes its denomination from the place or scituation of the Sorrance, it being a bruise or hurt on the top of the chine of the back behind the Saddle right against the Navel.

The causes are divers, as either when the Tree of the Saddle is split or is not well stuf, or by any other weight or burden, by the hardness whereof the place becomes galled: of all wrinches, bruises and galls on the back, this is the most vile and dangerous, and if not taken in time will prove a very difficult cure.

The signs are very apparent to the Eye, for the
flesh

flesh will be puffed up and spongy, of a dark rotten complexion.

The ancient practice in the cure of this Sorrance was first with an Incision knife to cut away all the dead and proud flesh, then with a cauterising Iron burn a hole about four inches lower than the Navel Gall, putting a rowel of Horse-hair through it; then take the sole of an old shooe, or Oyster shells, and burning them, reduce them into powder, and strow all over the sore therewith; as you find the sore grows moist renew your application of more powder.

Those receipts which are of later experience are these: take Oyl de Bay, Costus, Foxgrease, Oyl of Savin, of each an Ounce, then take a good quantity of great Garden worms, and scour them with White-Wine and Salt, put all these several ingredients into an earthen pot, and stop them up very close, thus boil them: having so done, adde thereunto of Sallet Oyl one Ounce and an half; then set it over the fire again, and boil it so long till you have brought it to a perfect Ointment, after this strain it into some clean vessel, and so preserve it for your future use: when at any time you have occasion to dress therewith this Sorrance called the Navel-Gall, take hereof, and warm it; then take Lint or hurds, and dip therein, anointing the sore, and it will not be long before it will be whole.

Or thus you may do: first take a sharp knife, and cut away the loose skin, then anoint it with an Ointment made of a spoonfull of Dialthæa, a pint of Train-Oyl, and about the quantity of a Pidgeons Egge of Verdigrease; this is a speedy cure

246 The Cures of all Outward

for a Navel Gall of small standing ; but if it be of long continuance, so that the flesh be hard, then cut out the Crush, and with a Cauterizing Button sear the wound within, then take some fine Cotten, and dip it into some of the green Ointment (the Receipt whereof I have already given you) I say, with this Cotten so dipt tent the wound, and the cure is not to be questioned.

If this hurt be newly gotten, and the skin not broken, then only take cold Brandy Wine, and with a rag dipt therein dab it on the swelling, and three or four times so doing or dressing it will dissipate or bring down the swelling.

This following receipt I have often tryed, and do find it an excellent remedy against any Navel Gall, Set-fast, or sore back whatsoever : take only a quarter of a pint of Train Oyl, and as much Verdigrease as the bigness of a Musquet bullet well beaten, mingle these together, and preserve them in a Gallipot for your use ; the Sorrance appointed herewith will speedily be healed, and that which facilitates the Cure is, it kills all Flies whatever as soon as they tast of this Ointment.

Notwithstanding these excellent Receipts afore mentioned, there are others which go another way to work ; that is, they take the white of an Egge, Wheat flower, Honey, Mustard, and Soap, of each a like quantity, and mingle them together ; having so done, they cut away the dead flesh, and then wash it with Ale, Butter and Urine, and after that they lay on the foresaid Plaister ; if after twice or thrice dressing they find the proud flesh to grow again, then they kill it by pouring in Nerve Oyl, and skin it
with

with the powder of Oister shells.

Lastly, take Bettony, powder of Brimstone, Ellebor, Pitch and old Grease, of each a like quantity, and stamp them together into an Ointment, then take old Urine and wash the sore well therewith, after that anoint it with the above specified composition till it be whole.

Nose running.

If your Horse be troubled with running at the Nose, then take Orpin and Brimstone, and put them on a chafing-dish of Coles, and so burn them, and with the smoak perfume his head and nose; this will cause a dissolution of thick and congealed humours either in the head or brain.

Or for further trial: take of Auripigmentum and Tussilago, of each two drachms, these pulverize, and make them into a Paste by the addition of Venice Turpentine well washed; make these into flat Cakes about the circumference of a six pence, and having dried them, take a Chafing-dish of burning Coles, and put them thereon, and therewith perfume your Horses head every day.

Over reach, or Upper attain.

The Over reach is nothing else but a dolorous swelling of the master sinew, or Back sinew of the Shank bone, by reason that the Horse doth sometimes over reach or strike that sinew with the toe of his hinder foot, causing him by that means to go very lame and halting.

The signs of this Malady are so apparent they need no remonstrance, therefore I shall pass to the cure which is diversly performed.

First, some wash the leg with warm water,

R 4

then

then shaving off the hair as far as the swelling goeth, they scarifie the Sorrhance with the point of a very sharp knife, causing the blood to issue thence; then take of Cantharides and Euphorbium, of each half an Ounce; and with four Ounces of Soap mingle them together, then spread some of this Ointment all over the Sorrhance, letting him rest at the place where he was drest for about half an hour; then tie him up so that he cannot come at the sore with his mouth, letting him stand without Litter; the next day do after the like manner; and the third day anoint the sore with fresh Butter; continue so doing seven or eight days; then make him a Bath after this manner.

Take of Mallows three handfuls or more, one Rose cake, of Sage one handful, boil these together in a good quantity of water, till such time as the Mallows be soft, then put in to them half a pound of butter, and half a pint of Sallet Oyl; being somewhat more than blood warm wash the Sorrhance every day till it be whole.

Now if the swelling by no Salve will be dissolved, take a fine thin hot drawing Iron, and draw his leg all downward with the hair in many small strikes from the one end of the swelling to the other, and make the strikes very thick together, and deep withal, then anoint the burning three days with black Soap, and so turn him to grafs.

Secondly, there are others which prescribe this method for the cure of an Over reach in the heel, and that is, first cut out with your Incision knife the Over reach, so that it may be very plain, and

and having washt it with Beer and Salt, lay thereunto a plaister made after this manner.

Take Oat meal and Butter, of each so much as will make a Salve; put them in a Mortar, and so incorporate them, then lay it to the Sorrhance; continue so doing once a day till the cure be perfected.

Otherwise search it well to the bottom, cleansing it from all manner of Gravel, and washing it clean with mans Urine, then take an handful and an half of Nettles, and an handful and an half of Salt; and putting them in a cloth, lay them to the sore; thus do three mornings together, and after that set the shooe on with a Leather under it, then pour in some Hogs greafe scalding hot, and a little after that scalding hot Rozen; and lastly, but presently after that, put to it some Wheat bran, and no doubt of a cure.

Or you may first wash the Sorrhance with water and Salt, then take two big Onions, two spoonfuls of Pepper beaten small, of Crown sope the bigness of a Tennis ball, beat these together into a Salve, and laying it on a linnen cloth, having first dried the foot, apply it, and remove it not from thence, but once in a day and night, renewing it in that manner still till it be whole, but as it heals do it seldomer.

Lastly, that which I have ever found to be an excellent remedy for any Sinew strain whatsoever, is, take the whites of six Egges, as much Bole Armoniack and Bean flower as by setting it over the fire will become a Salve; take of this when it is very hot, and Plaisterwise lay it on the Sinew-strain, and round about the leg; you must
not

not omit so doing till all manner of swelling thereabout be clean taken away.

Oyl of Oats, what the Sovereign vertues are, and how to make it.

As far as I can find, that skilful Artist Mr. *Markham* was the first inventor of this incomparable Oyl, and so *Thomas de Grey, Esq;* seems to acknowledge, when writing in the praise hereof, confesseth that he never could meet with it any where else, either in *England, France, or Italy;* and that he would not use any other Oyl (if he could come by this) in any internal administration whatsoever, having found the excellency thereof by his own and other mens painful experiences: thus it is made.

Take two Gallons of Milk, and being warm over the fire, put thereunto four ounces of burnt Allom, which will curdle it like a Posset, skim off the Curd, and throw it to the Dunghill, but strain the Whey through a coarse cloth into a clean Vessel, then take a quarter of a peck of Oats dry, and clean husked, and put them into the Whey; but the Oats must not have been dried; and then set the Whey over the fire, boiling the Oats so long till they swell and break; then take them off, and put the Oats into a Cullender, that the Whey may gently drain from them without pressing; this done, put the Oats into frying pan, and hold them over the fire, stirring them so long till you see no fume to ascend, then suddenly take them off, and clap them into an hard Press, pressing them there exceedingly, what comes from them is the Oil of Oats, which you must reserve in a glass very closely stopd.

It stands with reason that this Oyl should be the most Sovereign of all others for any internal distemper in the body of an Horse, since it is extracted and made from the natural and most nourishing food an Horse can eat.

Take five spoonfuls of this Oyl, and put it into a pint of sweet Wine, or a quart of strong Ale, and give it an Horse to drink, pouring in some of the Whey into his Nostrils, and it will absolutely cure him of the Glanders.

It is also the best of all Purgations, for it purgeth away all those malignant and venomous humours, which are the nourishers of any incurable Farcy whatsoever; neither is there any offensive humour within the Fomentors of dangerous distempers which it doth not suddainly dissipate and expel.

Old Sores speedily and safely cured.

Take Rock Allom, and burn it in a fire-pan, then take as much Bay Salt, and burn that too; having so done, beat them to a very fine powder, then take of common Honey and sweet Butter of each a quantity alike, and work all these into a body, bring it thus into a salve, and not by the help of fire.

When you intend to use it, let it be either plasterwise or Tentwise, or both ways, according as occasion shall require; this will not only heal any sore very perfectly, but will also eat away any dead or proud flesh.

Poll-Evil in the Neck.

The Poll-evil is so called from its breeding in the Poll behind the Ears, it is a great Swelling, or apostumated Inflammation, and to say the truth

truth, let men give it what appellation they please, it is more than a Fistula in Grain or formal.

The Causes of this Pole-evil are several: as first from the Horses struggling in a new hard hempen halter, or from a blow given behind the ears, by reason of which bruise, the flesh festering and becoming inflamed, this loathsome Sorrance hath its original; many times, bilious and malignant humours invading that place do cause it.

The Signs are a tumour with Inflammation: where note that the putrefaction is greater within than without, and therefore you must timely think of letting out the corruption before it happen to break out it self.

As to the cure, you must lay unto the swoln place whatever is mollifying, and will ripen it: as for example, take Hogs grease, and lay thereunto as hot as may be; or else take Loam of a Mud wall, in which there is no Lime, by how much the older it is, the better; boil hereof what you think sufficient in the strongest White-Wine-Vinegar, and let it boil to a Pulcfs, and apply this very hot to the swelling, renewing it twice a day till you have brought the swelling to suppuration that it is fit to be laid open, then look where it is softest, and with a Copper round instrument (for that is better than any Iron) as big as a mans little finger, and sharp at the end, and being hot, thrust it in two inches beneath the soft place, so that the point of your cauterizing instrument may come out at the ripest place; by this means the corruption will descend downward at the neather hole, which you must keep open for the better issuing

fuing of the aforesaid matter ; to that end tent it with Flax dipt in Hogs greafe warm, laying thereto a Plaister also of Hogs greafe upon the same, renew this every day once for five days together ; at the expiration of which time, take half a pound of Turpentine very cleanly washed in several waters, which when thoroughly dried, mingle therewith the Yolks of three Egges and a little Saffron.

Now take your probe, and search the bottom of the wound, then make a Tent with a piece of dry Sponge never dipt in water, so long as near upon to reach the bottom, and so thick as it may fill up the cavity, but before you put it in dip it in the afore specified Ointment ; after this lay on a Plaister of Hogs greafe made indifferent warm, changing your old Plaister for a fresh till you have perfected the cure.

Or thus you may do ; first, ripen the swelling, then open it, and cleanse it well from its matter and corruption, then apply Hogs greafe to extract the fire your Cauterizing Iron hath left behind it, then heal it after this manner.

Take of Hogs greafe the quantity of a Tennis-ball, Brimstone beaten into fine powder, with an ounce of Quick-silver very well killed, and so mingle these together that you have made them into an Ointment, and anoint the swelling herewith : having so done, take a penny worth of red Tar, the reddest is the best, of Hogs greafe half a pound, of green Copperas and Bay Salt, of each an handtul, and pulverize them ; then boil these exceeding well, and as it comes scalding hot off the fire, dip therein a clout fastned at the
end

end of a stick and anoint or scald the sore four mornings together; for this scalding kills the Fistula, so that its future and further progress is absolutely hindered; after this you need only but to warm the Tar, and apply it to the place; and the Cure is consummated.

Now there are some Farriers which cure the Poll-evil only by first opening the sore with an hot cauterizing Iron, then taking red Lead and black Soap, mingle them with water till they are thick, and so tent the Horse therewith till he be whole.

But the best Remedy I have met withal, as a general Cure for any Pole-evil whatsoever, is; first, shave off the hair from the part that is swoln, then lay thereon a Plaister of black Shoemakers-wax, spread upon white Alom'd Leather, letting it lie thereon till it have broken the Impostume; then take better than a pint of strong white Wine-vinegar, and, when it is about to boil, put therein as much Lome of a Mud-wall, straws and all, as will thicken it into a Poultice, applying this to the Sorraine, as hot as the Horse can suffer it; and by renewing it once a day in a little time the Impostume will be whole.

Pole-evil in the Head.

There is little difference between the Pole-evil in the Neck and the Pole-evil in the Head, only there is a discrepancy as to their place: the Causes and Symptoms of this distemper are much alike. As to the Cure of the Pole-evil in the Head take this method.

As soon as you perceive a swelling, take presently half an ounce of the oyl of Turpentine, and

and anoint therewith the part grieved, and that it may the better sink in, chafe it very well with your hand, and so let it alone for four days, in which time you will perceive the skin to shrink up; seeing the swelling thus begin to abate and come down, then take of Burgundy-pitch and black Pitch of each an ounce and an half, and with a slice daub or spread it over the swelling in his forehead; but first you must melt them in a Pipkin, with an ounce of Mastick; having so done, take flocks and lay them on thick upon the place anointed, and so let them lie till they fall off, which most usually will be about three weeks; now when the Plaister falls off, if you see no venom nor swelling remaining, you may conclude you have done your work; but if the impostumation remain unbroken, then lance it, and cut out what dead flesh you find therein, filling the cavity with Flax to dry up the blood and putrefaction, suffering it to remain in that condition seven or eight hours; then take it out, and lay thereon some of that generally known Receipt for a Canker in the Head, dressing it once a day; if you make an hole at the edge of the swelling below, it will heal much the sooner: still when you take off your Plaister, mark (by looking on the top of the Pole-evil) how far the proud flesh reacheth, which will be white and like Jelly, and cut it out with your Incision-knife, till you come to the sound red flesh; spare not to cut it all out, though from the flesh and veins there flow a great quantity of blood; but cut not, by any means, the Pax-wax, which you shall plainly discern by its whiteness. But you shall find a white pith
near

near the Pax-wax, which I would advise you by all means to remove, and indeed it is no ways difficult so to do; for if you will lay but your Pinchers to it, it will come away whole like a plugg; having drawn it out, apply some of the Medicine aforesaid, and it will heal it up.

Pasterne-joint strained.

When I speak of a strain in the Pasterne-joint, I do not mean that the back sinews have sustained any detriment, wherefore if the Pasterne-joint be only strained; then take a quart of Brine, and boil it till it ariseth, then strain it and put to it of Tansey and Mallows of each one handful, of Honey two spoonfuls, and of Sheeps-tallow four ounces; take these and, having first chopt them very well, pound them in a Mortar, after this put them into a Posnet and boil them well; then take it off, and when it is but warm, put it into a cloth, and sow it on to the Sorrhance, letting it remain there six days; but if in that time the Cure is not wrought, then wash it with warm water, shaving off the hair, scarifie the joint, and then apply the Medicine compounded of Cantharides and Euphorbium, and this will undoubtedly effect the Cure.

Prick on the Crownet with a Pitch-fork or otherwise.

Take a pottle of Stale Urine, two handfals of Mallows, and half a pound of Boars-grease; boil them together, and being indifferent hot bathe the Legs therewith; then apply the Mallows to the Wound; but if the swelling ascend upwards and be great, then rope the Leg up, and moisten the ropes with his Urine: this is good for any swelling whatever. Or

Or take Turpentine, black Soap, Hogs-grease, great Treat and Pitch a quantity alike, mix and boil them well together, and so apply it warm or otherwise.

Pricking in the Foot.

If an Horse by chance, or negligence of the Smith be prickt in the foot, you will know it when he goeth, by favouring that foot which is offended; when he stands still, by standing a tip-toe on that foot.

As soon as you shall perceive your Horse to be thus abused, take off his shooe, and pare him by degrees with the Butterifs and your Drawing-knife; having found out the bottom of his grievance, cleanse it very well; take Turpentine, fresh Butter with a small quantity of black Pitch, sodden together and poured in scalding hot; then dip some Tow therein, stuffing it well between the shooe and foot; you may take a piece of upper-leather and stuff it in between the Towe and the shooe.

Now if it be some Nail in the streets or channel which hath struck into his foot, then finding out the Nail, pluck it out and heating it red hot, put it again into the same hole from whence you drew it; thus searing it with the red hot Nail will keep the hole from festeriing and rankling; then melt Turpentine, Butter and black Pitch, and as it is scalding, pour it therein; then put on the shooe, and stuff the foot with Towe or Hurds: this never faileth.

Prickt in the shooing and festeriing afterwards.

If your Horse be prickt by the carelesness or ignorance of a Smith, and after the hurt receiv-

ed (you perceiving it not presently) the place rankleth and festereth in a very great measure: then must you first open it very well to the very bottom, letting out all the corruption therein; search it be sure as far as the Nail did go, and then mundifie it; after this, take five or six House-snails, a little Salt, the quantity of a Walnut of Soap, and beat these together, and lay this to the foot that was prickt, a whole day and a night, or longer, till you see it begin to heal, then dress it but once in eight and forty hours: five dressings will be sufficient.

This pricking in the foot hath several names, though they all import but one thing; as Accloyed, Cloyd, Retrait and prickt; yet *Mr. Markham* seems to make some difference between them, of which I shall give you as brief an account as I may.

But first give me leave to recount to you the several general Causes, which happen very commonly by the ignorance and unskilfulness of the Smith in driving of his nails, whereby some are broken, and not being immediately drawn out, caused the part to fester and impostumate; sometimes the Horse is injured by the weakness or ill-pointing of the Nails.

Now if after the new shooing of your Horse you suspect him prickt, yet cannot discover it by his halting, search his feet, and that foot which is grieved, he will shrink up as soon as you have laid your Pinners to the place; for their nipping will pain him to the quick. Or by knocking with an Hammer on the top of the Clenches, you will presently discover which Nail it is that
hurts

hurts him. Now by reason of the anguish and the pain he undergoes by this pricking, his foot will be more hot that is hurt than the rest; so that if you take a pail of water and throw on his feet, that foot grieved will be sooner dry about the hoof than the rest.

Having discovered his Malady by these infallible Symptoms; first search his foot very well; then take of Goats-grease or rather Deers-suet, if to be had, of Turpentine, Sallet-oil and new Wax of each two ounces; melt these together, and before you take it from the fire, put to it of ordinary Honey three ounces, and of *Sanguis Draconis* one drachm pulverized; work these into one body over a slow fire, and make an Unguent thereof; take a good quantity hereof and pour it into the Sorrhance indifferently warm, then stop it up with Towe or Hurds, and be sure that he tread in no cold water.

The French are so in love with this their own experienced Remedy, that they will admit of none else for the cure of a prick.

Having first searched and washed the Sorrhance very well, then they take Oil de Bay four ounces, of Orfin, Cantharides & Euphorbium of each two ounces; make them all into fine powder, and set it on a small slow fire, stirring it till it become an Ointment, with which they dress the Sorrhance; and to speak the truth, it is a very excellent and speedy Remedy.

Now it becometh every one that hath respect for his Horse, to be careful in the curing of this same prick in the foot; for if it be not thoroughly searched, cleansed and healed to the bottom,

it will certainly break out about the Cronet or top of the Hoof, so loosning the hoof round about that it is ren to one but that the hoof will come clearly off.

Now if you perceive that it begins to break out above, make as large a vent as stands with convenience to let out the corruption; and then take of Bole-armoniack half a quartern, and of Bean-flower as much, and with two Eggs beat them so that they be well incorporated; then spread it Plaister-wise and lay it round the Cronet, binding it fast on, and not removing it in eight and forty hours; then you may take off the old Plaister and put on a new one, continuing so to do every other day till you find it grow firm and hard above; for this Plaister will force the humours downwards, which you must extract by Turpentine and Hogs-grease, until it leave running; then take burnt Alom and pulverize it, and with the powder thereof strewed on the sore, with a few Hards, dry and heal up the Sor-rance.

Again, sometimes the thing, as Stub, Nail or so forth. is gotten so far into the flesh, that you cannot fix any instrument thereon to draw it out; then take a good quantity of black Soap, and lay it to the place grieved one whole night, and it will so draw it in that little time, as that you may be able to lay hold thereon with a pair of Nippers: the roots of Reeds stamp and mingled with Honey will draw out any Nail or Stub, so will also black Snails stamp and incorporated with fresh Butter: that being withdrawn which was so offensive to the foot of the Horse, pour

pour into the hole Oyl of Olive scalding hot ; when that hath lain so long there that it is cold, pour into it Turpentine every whit as hot ; after half an hours time, take powder of Sulphur and strow thereon ; then bolster the Sorrance with Hurds, and let no wet nor filth annoy it and it will be quickly well.

The pricking in the foot is called a *Retrait*, when in the driving of a Nail the point is so weak, that instead of going forward, it bendeth in the quick, the Nail being sometimes hollow, and then it shivereth in twain in the driving, whereby one part, in the drawing out, many times is left behind ; so that this *Retrait* is the worst of all pricks, in as much as the flaw cankereth by remaining in the foot.

This Sorrance is discovered, as other pricks are, by groping the hoofs round with a pair of Pincers, &c.

The Cure is little different from those which appertain to all pricks ; for what will cure one is a Remedy in general for all ; however for variety take this one : having first with your Butteriss or Drawing-knife laid open the place grieved, well-searching and cleansing it : then take of Turpentine and Tar of each an Ounce, of Pitch and Beef-suet of each an ounce, and one head of Garlick ; boil these together, and lay it to the Sore as hot as the Horse can suffer it ; if it should happen to break out above, the same medicine will be a Remedy.

Cloying differs from a *Retrait*, in that the whole Nail is stricken into the very quick of the foot, remaining there clenched as the

262 The Cures of all Outward

other Nails : the discovery is as afore-
said.

As to the Cure you must instantly draw his Shooe, and having found out the hole, presently take half a pound of Frankincense, a pound of Rosin, and the like quantity of Pitch of Greece, half a pound of black Pitch, one pound of new Wax, one pound of Goats grease, half a pound of Varnish, half a pound of Turpentine, two ounces of Oil Olive, and having melted these all together, and incorporated them into one body; lay it to the Hoof plaister-wise; this is a speedy Remedy not only for any sort of Prick, whether Cloy, Retrait or Accloy, but also for any cracks, chinks, or clefts of the Hoof whatsoever.

Lastly, first open his foot, then wash it with Salt and Vinegar; after that take of Honey and Vinegar of each a like quantity, a little Oil, and some Suet of an He-goat; set them over a soft fire and stir it; when you perceive it to incline towards a reddish colour, put thereunto Verdigrase and Vitriol of each a like quantity pulverized, keeping it still stirring so long till it be not only red but thick also; then take it off, and stop the sore every day therewith till the Cure be wrought, which will be in a little time,

Paston what it is, how made, according to the best method, and what are its most excellent Virtues.

Paston is a French word, and signifieth no more than a Plaister; but I shall assure you this Paston or Plaister is somewhat more than ordinary; for according to the opinion of the most expert, it is a sovereign Remedy for many Sor-
rances,

rances, especially for dissipating and dissolving all evil humours descending into the leggs, there afflicting the poor Creature after a grievous manner.

The Receipt of making this Paston or Plaister is : take of common Honey one pound, of Turpentine half a pound, Bole-armoniack and Frankincense finely pulverized of each four ounces, of Mastich beaten into powder two ounces, of *Sanguis Draconis* two ounces, of new-laid Eggs seven, of the strongest white Wine-vinegar one pint, of the flower of Rice seven ounces ; incorporate these together : use this Plaister-wise, and it will work wonderful effects.

Pill for the Glanders, &c.

This Pill, which is commonly prescribed for the Glanders, is of incomparable use for many other distempers, which I have found in my practice even to wonder ; It was a long time before I found out the Medicine, but having tried its excellency, I would not be induced to part with it for a considerable sum that was offered for the Receipt : thus it is made.

Take Anniseeds, Cummin, Enula-campana dried, and Carthamus of each two ounces ; pulverize these very finely, and afterwards sieve them ; then put to them of the powder of Brimstone and of the juice of Liquorish of each one ounce, which Liquorish must be infused in a pint of white Wine ; then take of the Oyl of Anniseeds, and of the Syrop of Colts-foot of each one ounce, of Sallet-oil and live Honey of each half a pint ; mix these all together, and make it into Pills with as much fine Wheat-flower

264 **The Cures of all Outward**

as will make it into Paste; proportion your Pills to almost the bigness of a Pidgeons Egg, and keep them close stopt in a Gallipot, they will keep good the whole year. The Dose must not be above one in a morning; as it is excellent against all vehement Cold, so it preventeth heart-sickness, purgeth away molten grease, recovereth a lost appetite, keeps the heart from fainting in a long journey, and they will fatten a lean Horse in a very little time.

Purgation defined, next its several parts.

The definition of Purgation is, to empty and evacuate all superfluous peccant humours, which do cumber and annoy the body with their venomous and malignant disposition.

These bad humours breed ill nutriment, by hindring good concoction, which is called by the learned *Cacochymia*, which, when Nature cannot correct or amend, then must be forced by, and so driven away and expelled by Purgation: now there are divers sorts of Purges, each proper for its several distemper, which I have endeavoured already to lay down each in their particular order, and therefore I shall be the briefer here.

Purgation for great Surfeits.

Take a pint of white Wine, or instead thereof a quart of new Ale, as much of the best powder of Mechoachan as you can take upon a shilling at four times; mingle them together, and in an Horn give it the Horse luke-warm to drink; after this ride your Horse moderately for an hour,
and

and then set him up warm upon the Trench six hours fasting; then give him a warm Mash, and a little after some clean Oats, with Bran mingled, but give it him a little at a time, and let his Hay be wet that night; this will cause him to evacuate the slime (engendred by surfeit) in great flakes upon his dung: See more of these Purgations in the letter P in the Alphabet of Internal Diseases.

Papps underneath an Horses Tongue, vide Barbes.

Pain in Horses Teeth how remedied.

The Tooth-ach or pain in Horses Teeth is occasioned several ways; first by the falling down of gross humours from the head into the Teeth and Gums; this Malady most afflicteth Horses of fewest years, being very young and coltish; the swelling and inflammation of the Gums doth sufficiently declare the nature of the Distemper.

Secondly an Horse will have the Tooth ach, when his upper Jaw-teeth are so over-grown, as that they hang over the nether Jaw-teeth, cutting and razing the insides of his cheeks with their exceeding sharpness.

Thirdly and lastly, this pain may happen by corruption of blood, which shall so weaken and loosen his Teeth, that through their tenderness he will not be able to chew his meat.

The Cure of the first Tooth-ach, proceeding from distillation of humours, is wrought by rubbing all the outside of the Horses Gums with fine Chalk and strong Vinegar well incorporated together; or else having washed the Teeth, as
afore

aforesaid, take powder of Pomegranate-pills and strow thereon; then take Rozin, Pitch and Mastich, and melting them together, lay it plaister-wise to the Horses Temples.

If his Tooth-ach proceed from the second cause, *viz.* the upper Jaw teeth overgrown and so sharp as that they cut the insides of the cheeks, then take your Gouge, and with a Mallet strike or cut those teeth shorter gradually by little and little, turning the hollow side of your Gouge towards the Teeth, and so running them along from first to last, then file them smooth from all raggedness; having thus done, take water and salt and wash your Horses mouth very well therewith.

Now if the Tooth-ach proceed from the last cause, that is to say, from the looseness of the Teeth; then you may do well to let the Horse bleed under the Tail, next the Rump; then with Sage rub his Gums, or else, (which is much better) wash very well his mouth with Salt, Sage and Honey beaten together, this will fasten his Teeth; then give him in his provender the tender crops of black Briars.

Pains.

The Pains is a certain Ulcerous distemper or Scab growing in the Pasterns of an Horse between the Fetlock and the Heel, from whence issueth a fretting waterish humour; this happens usually by the Laziness of the Groom or Hostler, in not rubbing well the heels of an Horse after a journey in Winter-time. And there are no Horses so subject to this distemper as those which have long hair on their Fetlocks; hence

it

comes that your Frizonds and Flanders Mares (which are in such great esteem, among the Gentry of *England*, for the Coach) are very much & often troubled therewith by the least negligence of the Groom; for the hair about the Patterns being always very long, the sand and dirt gets into it, fretting the skin and flesh and so breedeth the Scab.

The signs are, a palpable Scab, with an hot waterish humour glitting from thence, which in its passage scaldeth off the hair as it goeth.

The Cure is, having first taken up the Shackle-veins on both sides; then take the soft roe of a red Herring, Mustard and black Soap; beat these and incorporate them together, then boil them in Vinegar till they become a Salve, and apply it to the sore; this is an admirable and speedy Cure.

Or else you may take a pound of Hogs-grease, a penny worth of Verdigrease, two ounces of Mustard, half a pound of Oyl de Bay, a quarter of a pound of Nerve-oil, half a pound of Honey, half a pound of English Wax, one ounce of Arsenick, two ounces of red Lead and half a pint of Vinegar; boil all these together till you have made an Ointment thereof: Having made the sore bare apply this ointment thereunto very hot, renewing it once a day till the Cure be compleated.

That Remedy which I have experienced to be most efficacious is this: Take of Turpentine, Hogs-grease, Honey and black Soap of each a like quantity, and having molten them over a
flow

flow fire, take them off, and add to them a small quantity of Bole-armoniack finely pulverized; then as you work these together with a stick in your right hand, so, with your left, pour in by little Wheat-flower, which you must have in readines by you, to make a composition as thick as an Ointment. Having first cleared the sore of its hair, and made it raw, apply this Salve thereunto, spred on a linnen cloth, renewing it once a day till you have made a Cure.

There are yet other some who hold this for an excellent Remedy for the Pains; and that is, take Pepper, Garlick stampd, Coleworts and old Hogs-grease of each a like quantity; then beat them into a Salve, and lay it to the sore, changing your Plaister once a day till it be whole.

Lastly, take green Copperas and Roch Alom of each half a pound, one handful of Bay-salt; boil these in a gallon of running water; then take it off, and add thereunto a pint of Honey; then boil them over again; anoint the Sore herewith; then rub it with the powder of Glass, Mustard and Vinegar commixed; then take Cream, and the inner rinde of Elder tree poundd to a Salve, and skin the sore herewith, using it twice a day.

Powder of Honey and Lime.

Take a quantity of unsleckt Lime, as much as you shall think sufficient, and pulverize it very finely; then take a convenient quantity of Honey, or so much as is requisite to mingle it together, and to make it into a thick Paste, and afterwards work it into the form of a Loaf; then bake it in an Oven; then when it is well baked
take

take it forth, and when cold, beat it into fine powder, and so preserve it for your use; it dryeth, healeth, and skinneth all sores whatsoever.

Quitter bone.

The *Quitter bone* is an hard round swelling upon the *Cronet* of the hoof betwixt the heel and the quarter, and groweth most commonly on the inside of the foot; it is caused by some hurt the Horse hath sustained in the foot, either by a prick in shooing, by gravelling, which fretteth inwardly, and forceth an Ulcer to break upward, or by some stub or nail running into the foot as he travaileth. Sometimes it cometh by a blow, or by treading one foot upon the other; this *Quitter bone* is the most dangerous of all outward Sorrhances, and is known by a very apparent swelling, which in less than six days will come to an head, breaking, and then the matter or corruption will issue out of a small hole, yet deep.

The cure is thus: cut the hoof open to the quick, then take Galbanum Sagapenum, Pitch of Greece, Olibanum, Mastich, Oyl and White-Wax, of each one Ounce with half a pound of Sheeps suet: melt them upon a soft fire, and work them well into a body, and dress therewith the sore until it be cured.

Or else do thus: as soon as you perceive the nature of your Horses Sorrhance, that it is a *Quitter bone*, open it above if you find it soft, then take Auripigmentum pulverized, and infuse it twenty eight hours into very strong White-Wine Vinegar, then lay it to the sore, and it will so eat about the *Quitter bone*, that with your Pliers you

you may easily pluck it away; the bone or gristle being taken forth, heal up the wound with the Copperas water and green Ointment, before prescribed you in a preceeding Chapter.

Although a Quitter bone be far gone, and by that means difficult to be cured, yet this is an infallible remedy. You must first take off a quarter of the hoof right under the Quitter bone, so that the corruption may have the freer passage; a part of the hoof being off, lay in the place thereof a piece of Hares skin to stop the blood, and there let it lye twenty four hours without molestation, then take it away, and wash it with Wine and Vinegar; now to the intent you may kill the rankling, scald it with boiling hot Butter and Salt boiled together; do this thrice, once every other day; and it will not only hinder it from festring, but hinder all manner of dead and proud flesh to grow in it.

Then take of Verdigrease the quantity of a Pidgeons Egge pulverized, a quarter of a pint of White Wine-Vinegar, and as much Honey, boil these together with the Verdigrease, all the time it boils you must be careful that you continually stir it for about half an hour, then take it off and preserve it in a clean vessel, and therewith every day anoint the Sorrance till it be well; having cured the Sorrance, then must you recover the hoof, which is done by taking Tar, Tallow, Turpentine, and Dogs grease boiled together; let not the Turpentine be put in till you are about to remove it from the fire; if possibly you may forbear, take not off the whole hoof because it will require a long time to produce another, but
anoint

anoint the torn hoof herewith ; and if any thing will bring a new piece in the place of the old this will do it.

The *Italian* cureth this Malady thus : he first opens the sore, then he puts into it Salt of Tartar, and having quite eaten away the Quitter bone, he taketh Honey and Verdigrease, and boiling them together healeth it up therewith.

The *French* put Arsnick into the hole of the Quitter bone, letting it lye there a day and a night, stopping up the mouth thereof very close ; if after opening it the cavity look black within it is concluded, the Arsnick hath wrought its design : then to allay the fire, and restore the mortified flesh, they take Hogs grease and Turpentine, and having melted them together they tent the wound therewith : being suspicious that the Core is not eaten away or removed ; then make a Plaister of Pitch, Rozen, and Wax, of each a like quantity, and of Turpentine as much as all the rest ; being sure that the Gristle is consumed, then heal it up with this Unguent : take of common Honey and Verdigrease powdred, of each *quantum sufficit*, boil these till it be red and therewith tent the wound till it be whole ; with this caution, that you keep the mouth of the wound open till you are assured that it is healed at the bottom.

If it be your chance at any time to meet with a Quitter bone that hath passed through a great many Farriers hands, by whose want of skill it hath been poisoned in such sort, that the Pastern hath been much swelled ; if so, the first thing you must do is to take up the Vein on that side of
the

the Leg, on which the Quitter bone groweth, to keep the humour back which affords it sustenance, then put in the quantity of a Bean of Arsnick to eat out the Core of the Quitter bone; where note that a Quitter bone is difficultly cured if you take not up a Vein; and when the Core is out you must first wash it well with White-Wine Vinegar and Salt before you heal it up.

Lastly, here followeth a very good receipt, neither troublesome nor costly in the composition; first, take Hogs grease and Verdigrease pounded together, and tent therewith the Sorrance for a day or two, then pour into the hole scalding hot Hogs grease, then lay a plaister of Pitch and Tar mixt over it for twenty four hours, if the bone rise not in that time do it once more, and it will rise.

Quick Scab.

The Quick scab is both noisome and infectious, and is Cousin Germain to the Leprosie: the reason why it goeth under this appellation is because it is no ways fixed, running from one part of the body to another, sometimes in the Mane, and not long after in the Tail, now in the Neck, and then in the breast,

The original cause is a surfeit by overheating the blood, which consequently putrefies, and from thence is ingendred the Quick scab.

Though there are several sorts of cures for this grievous Malady, yet by experience I know none better than this: first, breath a Vein, then shave or clip away the hair that either groweth upon or about the Sorrance: then take Mallows and Marsh Mallows, of each a like quantity, and
boil

boil them in fair water till these herbs be soft; preserve the Liqueur, and bath therewith together with the herbs this Quick scab three days at least together, and let the decoction be warm; then take of common Honey one pint, Copperas, Allom, Glass, Verdigrease, all pulverized, of each four ounces, Turpentine and Quick silver mortified, of each two ounces; boil all these together with the Honey unto an Ointment and herewith dress the Sorrance every day till it be whole.

Raising the Crest when fallen.

If you would have an Horses Crest that is fallen to stand as it should, then with your hand raise it to that form you would have it; see more of this in the letter C. the Section Crest fallen.

Red Water issuing out of old incurable Ulcers, the Cure.

This Water must be totally removed before any old Ulcer can be cured, for this water poisons the wound; the French give this Malady the appellation of *La Eu Roussé*, and I must confess that I am beholding to the French for its cure, it is thus effected.

There is an Herb which goeth by three or four names, viz. Emanuel, All-good, Bonus Henricus, or good King Henry; take of the roots hereof, and boil them in water, and give him a Drench hereof blood warm in an horn; this will remove the Red water, and then you may cure the old Ulcer as you are prescribed in the Section of Fistulas.

Repercussive Medicaments.

Repercussive Medicines are such as repel or drive back evil and malignant humours, Farriers call them Plaisters Defensative; these are to be used in great wounds or Ulcers: the best Repercussives are Vinegar, Salt, and Bole Armonick beaten together, and spread round about the Sore, or else white Lead and Sallet Oyl beaten together, or Red Lead and Sallet Oyl, , or else *Unguentum Album Camphoratum*, with a many more your own experience will indagate and discover.

Ring bone.

A Ring bone is at first a certain slimy humour and viscous, which resorting to the bones of their own nature cold and dry, cleave thereunto, and become hard, gristly, nay absolutely bony; its situation is ever upon the Cronet of the hoof.

The causes hereof are twofold, either natural or accidental; naturally, when either the Mare or Stallion have it from whom the Colt proceedeth; and though I never saw a Colt bring a Ringbone into the World with it, yet Mr. *Markham* avoucheth, he hath seen many Foals foaled with Ring bones on the feet; wherefore I shall advise you not to breed upon any such Stallion or Mare that either have had or have this Malady. Accidentally, this happens several ways; first, by some blow or stroak on the foot, or else from some evil humour descending, and settling upon the Cronet.

The Symptoms hereof are apparent to the eye, the Cronet of the hoof will be much swoln, especially that part which is next adjoining unto the
lower

lower part of the Pastern, the hair thereabout will grow bristly, and stare, and the Horse will go lame.

The Cures are several, but I shall prescribe you none here but what have been many times experimented with welcome success. First, scarifie the skin above the Ring bone with a Lancet, then take a great Onion, and pick out the Core, then take Verdigrease and unfleckt Lime, and put them therein, then cover up the hole, and in hot embers roast it till it be soft, then take it and bruise it well, and being very hot lay it to the sorrance; do thus five days together, you will not miss of a cure.

Another way to cure it.

First cast your Horse, or tye up his contrary leg with a strong rope, till you strike five or six holes in the Ring bone at the very edge of it; let the holes be equally distant from each other, then take Arsnick, and upon the top of your Fleim put some thereof into every hole, then bind up his foot for a night and a day.

But that which Esq; Grey prescribeth as infallible is this, take unfleckt Lime newly taken from the Kill well burned, which you may know by its lightness, pulverize this Lime, and lay it thick upon the place swelled, with a linnen cloth bound about it to keep it on, then let him stand in cold water an indifferent while; then taking him forth, unbind the foot, and he is certainly cured, for the burning of the Lime doth kill the Ring bone even to the very root thereof; this is a truth thoroughly experimented.

Rats tails how to cure.

Take green Vitriol half a pound, and boil it in a pint of running water, with Alom, Mustard, Sage and Hyfop; the night before you apply this anoint the sores made raw with strong Mustard, the next day wash them with the water afore specified, and it is a cure.

Rowels, how to put them in, whether French or English.

If you are to place a Rowel in the breast, make it lean to that part of the shoulder which is grieved, then take a Lancet, and only cut the skin through, not cross, but down right, then put in your finger between the skin and the flesh, raising the skin from the flesh round about the Orifice the breadth of a Tester, then take a piece of the upper leather of a shooe, and cut it round with an hole in the middle, then put a Needle and Thread through it; then take a quill, and put one end into the Orifice of his breast upwards, and so blow in the Wind; having blown it three or four times, run the Needle and Thread once through the Rowel, and once through the skin, and draw the Rowel into the cut; when you have thus placed the Rowel in the cut, with the hole of the Rowel right against the hole in the skin of the breast, so that it may not move; then with your Needle and thread run a stitch or two overthwart the cut, to keep in the Rowel; when you have thus done anoint it with Butter, and so let it stand five or six days, this is the best method can be prescribed.

Saddle bruised, or Swellings on the Back.

You must first take some wet Hay, but rotten
Litter

Litter is better, and lay it on the swelling; this will make it soft very quickly, then with a Lancet let out the putrefied matter, and let the cavity be filled with the powder of Rozen, then lay on a Plaister of Shoormakers Wax, and it is a Cure.

Swift cut.

Take a pint of White-Wine, and put to it three spoonfuls of Honey, stir these, and boil them to a Salve; then take it from the fire, and put to it half so much Turpentine as there was Honey, stir these all together; with this Salve anoint the Sorrance twice a day, and it will heal it quickly.

Stanching of blood.

Some ignorant Farriers have let an Horse bleed when the sign hath been in that place from whence he hath taken blood, by which means there hath followed so great an efflux of blood, that by reason it could not be stopped, it hath endangered the Horses life. Wherefore if any such thing should happen by this ignorance aforesaid, or by wounds, or any other accident, take presently some new Horse dung, and temper it with Chalk and Vinegar, and lay it to the wound, letting it remain there three days; or else lay thereunto wild Tansie bruised, Sage bruised, bruised Hyssop, or hot Hogs dung: but if these fail, this will not: take of the soft Down of Hare or Conies skin, and stop the bleeding place therewith, holding it to with your hand first a pretty while, if it be to a great wound, then spread over it a Plaister of Vinegar and Bole Armoniack incorporated together.

*Salves very good for the healing all sorts of Sores
and Wounds.*

I shall here, of some hundred sorts of Salves, only insert three or four, which I have found the best of any I have tried in above 45 years practice.

1. Take of the buds or tenderest tops of Elder-leaves one handful, first shred, then pound them in a Stone-mortar very well, till you bring them to a Salve; this is for present use, and you must apply it to the Sore with a linnen cloth, binding it so on that it shall not fall off.

2. Take of common Honey two ounces, Roch-alom, Verdigrise and Vinegar of each one ounce; you must pulverize the Alom and Verdigrise, then take of Sublimate finely powdered two ounces; boil these together a very little, and then take it off, using it as you shall find occasion.

3. Take of hard Rozin and Perosen of each two pound, of Virgin-wax, Frankincense and Sheep-suet of each one pound, of old tried Hogs-grease two pound; boil the Gums and Wax in a pint of white Wine, and then put into it the Sheep-suet and Hogs-grease, and when all is well molten and wrought into a body, strain it, and whilst it is yet hot, put thereto of Venice Turpentine two ounces; work all these together and keep it for your use.

4. Take tried Hogs-grease 1 pound, Verdigrise finely powdered 2 penniworth; let these take 3 or 4 walms over the fire; then take it off, and put to it of Venice Turpentine one Ounce, stir these all together till it be cold.

There are many more excellent Salves, Ointments, Powders, and Waters which for brevity
sake

take I omit, knowing that these will do as much as all the rest.

Shoulder Sorrances what they are with their Cures, and first of the Shoulder-wrench.

The several sorts of Sorrances which happen to the shoulder, are either discoverable by the eye, or to be felt by the hand: now as to the Shoulder Wrench it is discoverable to both.

It cometh of some dangerous slipping or sliding, or of too sudden stopping on the Gallop, &c.

The Cure is to take Wheat meal two pound, and put it into some red Wine, setting the Posnet, wherein they are, over the fire; then take Bole-armoniack finely pulverized half a pound, of ordinary Honey one pound; boil all these together and, when boiled, add to them of Pitch half a pound, and so keep them stirring till the Pitch be thoroughly melted, and as you are about to take it off the fire, put thereunto half a pound of ordinary Turpentine, of Cummin, Oil de Bay, *Dialthea*, *Sanguis Draconis*, Bay-berries, Fenugreek, Linseed-flowers of each two ounces; make all these into fine powder; then take an ounce of the Oil of Aspick; boil and mix these very well together; that done, charge the shoulder therewith down to the Knees; this is a sovereign Remedy for Shoulder wrenches, Knees or Hips, it comforteth the Sinews, it bringeth down swellings, and is very good against Kibes and Scratches.

Yet if this receipt should not answer your expectation (for the best Remedies may sometime fail) then first open his Breast-vein, after that rowel him from the nether part of the Spade-

bone down to the point of his Shoulder; which done, set a patten shooe upon the sound foot, and so turn him to grass for about a month, stirring and removing every other day the Rowels, thrusting out the matter; as soon as you perceive he goes sound take off the patten shooe and Rowels, and let him run a little longer to grass, and he will be perfectly well.

Shoulder pight or dislocated.

Shoulder pight or dislocated is, when an Horse by some great fall or strain hath the point of his Shoulder thrust out of joint or displaced, which is very discoverable by the sticking out of the point of the fore-shoulder farther than the sound; besides the Horse will halt downright.

This way you may effect the Cure: First, cast him upon that side which hath not the Shoulder dislocated; then fasten with a Cord the foot of the same leg all along a board, and that again to some tree or post, about three paces from the Horse; whilst this is extended, let one with a pail of cold water bathe and wash the dislocated member with his hand, in so doing, he must take up that member which he must chase from the top to the further end of the leg, by so doing the bone will be reduced to its proper place; that done, raise him very gently, and then let him blood in the Breast-vein, on that side the member is dislocated; then put on a patten shooe on the contrary foot, and let his forefeet be trammelled above a fortnight afterwards, to hinder him from lying down, and let there be daily a fresh restraining Charge applied to the shoulder; after this swim him against the
stream

stream, and then anoint him with this Unguent, and he will be perfectly cured; the Ointment is this: take Oil de Bay, Oil de Petra, Oil of Spike, and Nerve-oil of each an equal quantity, and anoint his shoulder therewith: this Remedy never failed me.

But the way of late much practised is to lay good store of straw under the horse; then put on his fore-legs a pair of Pasterns, and the like on his hinder, then having thrown him on his back, hang him by the legs from the ground with two ropes drawn over some beam or other thing convenient for that purpose; this will resettlement the bone in its pristine seat; then having let him down very softly, loose the fore Pastern of the sound leg, and with a Cord before you let him rise, tie the same leg to the foot of the manger, so short, as in his rising he shall be forced to hold his leg before him, for fear of putting his shoulder out of joint; let him stand so three or four days; as soon as he is up burn all the point of his shoulder with an hot Iron Chequerwise a full foot square at least; then charge all these burned places, and the whole shoulder with Pitch, Rozin and Tar melted together, laid on very hot, and clap flax of the colour of the Horse upon it; then charge him again over the flax: at three days end loose his foot, and put a pair of Pasterns on his feet; then suffer him not to lie down for twenty days, after that walk him out, if he go not well, give him as much more rest.

Shoulder strained.

For a Shoulder strained take of Oil of Pumpion, Oil of Spike, and Linseed-oil of each
an

an ounce and an half; mix these together, and rub and bathe his Shoulder therewith very well, and that it may sink in the better, heat a fire-pan red hot and hold it against his Shoulder; then bleed him in the shoulder, not forgetting to hopple his feet together, and he will soon be sound as ever.

Another Excellent Remedy.

Take a large Earthen vessel, and fill it full of the herb Asmart and Brook-lime, equally mixt together; then put to them as much of the tallest Urine as will cover them all over; then cover the pot close and set it aside in some cool place: now when you have occasion to make use hereof, proportion the quantity according to your discretion, and so putting both the Urine and Herbs into a Pipkin, boil it well; then take an old Boot and cut off the foot, then draw it over the Horses foot up almost to the Elbow of his Shoulder, keeping the nether part of the Boot close about his Leg, but letting the upper part be open and wide; then take your Composition as hot as the Horse can suffer it, into the Boot, fastening the Boot so about the Mane, that the mixture may be about the shoulder before and behind: thus do every day till you have expelled the grief, which will be in a short time.

Shoulder splat.

I have already discoursed of the Shoulder-wrench and Shoulder pight; it now falls in my way to treat of the Shoulder-splat: but first give me leave to give you the difference between them.

The Shoulder-wrench commonly is occasion-

ed by some slip, or by making the Horse to make too sudden a stop upon false ground, or by some fall, or by too short turning : Shoulder-pight cometh by some brush, strain or fall, which the Horse received by a leap, stroke or bruise against some hard thing, whereby the member is dislocated.

Now the shoulder-splat is when by some dangerous slip or slide upon some slippery or yielding ground, the horse hath his shoulder parted from the breast, tearing the flesh from the Brisket, leaving an open cleft in the flesh, not in the skin, which causeth a balk to be underneath the body, which will afterwards swell ; hereupon the Horse will not only halt, but draw his leg after him ; that is a sufficient Symptom to know the Shoulder-splat by.

Now as to the Cure : first put a strait pair of Pasterns on his forefeet ; then take of Dialthea one pound, of Sallet-oil one pint, of Oil de Bay half a pound, and of fresh Butter half a pound ; melt all these ingredients together in an earthen pot, and anoint the Sorrance therewith, and also round about the inside of the shoulder ; about three days after, at farthest, both the Sorrance and all the shoulder will swell ; then with a Lancet prick all those swoln places, (you may use a sharp hot Iron) and having so done, anoint it again with the Ointment aforesaid ; but if you see the swelling will not be asswaged, but that it cometh to suppuration ; then lay it open in that place where is the greatest swelling and is softest ; having so done, tent it with Flax dipt in Turpentine and Hogs-grease melted together,

gether; you must renew the tent twice a day if you will have a speedy Cure.

Shoulder pinched.

This Sorrance in the shoulder differs from the former, for this commonly cometh when the horse is two young, and at that age laboured and strained very much, or forced to carry too great a burthen.

The Signs are, his breast will be very narrow, and by reason of the consumption of the flesh, the sore part of the Shoulder-bone will stick out and be much higher than the flesh.

Several men several opinions, as to the Cure of this Malady; as for my own part, I shall only make mention of what I have a long time experienced, and that is: first Rowel your Horse, then lay this Charge or Plaister, all over his Breast, Shoulders and Withers: it is thus made.

Take of Pitch and Rozin of each a pound, of Tar half a pint; boil these together in a pot; then take it off, and when it is indifferently cooled, take a stick, and bind thereto some Flax, and dip it into the Charge, and daub all the shoulder over therewith; after that take Flax, as near as you can of the same colour of the Horse, and lay them on the Charge, observing every other day to take out the Rowels, and having cleansed them, place them as before; thus you must do for at least sixteen days, at the expiration of which time, take away your Rowels quite, and heal up the wounds with tents dipt in Turpentine and Hogs grease molten together.

Sincere

Sinew-sprung.

Sinew-sprung is when the Sinew is broken and severed from the flesh.

The Cure : Take of the leaves and roots of Solomons-seal, and of great Cumfry an equal quantity ; pound them small and infuse them in white Wine a day and a night ; then boil it, and when it is indifferent warm bathe the place grieved therewith, and after that bind thereunto the herbs and roots also ; do this once a day till the grief be remedied.

Sinew-grieved.

If the Horse complain only of the Sinew, by being grieved some way or other, without laceration or cutting ; then take a good quantity of Mallows, and boil them in water till they grow tender, ; then drain the water from them, and so stamp them very well, and apply them to the member thus grieved ; let the application be hot, and if you do thus over night, he will be well the next day ; however give him five or six days rest afterwards.

Sinew strained.

If you would corroborate a sinew strained by an over-reach or otherwise ; then take tried Hogs-grease, Horse-grease, May-butter and Sallet-oil five ounces of each, of new Wax two ounces, and of Camphire a third part to all the rest ; melt and mix them together and so make an Ointment thereof, and so therewith anoint the part grieved. You may double the quantity of your ingredients, or treble them, so that you preserve your composition in a Gally-pot it will keep a twelvemonth.

Sinew-

Sinew-spong.

Take a pint of Linseed-oil and boil it; then add thereto a quartern of *Aqua vite*, and stir them together, anointing your Horses leg therewith he will be perfectly cured.

If you would cure a Sinew-strain in the fore or hinder-leg, growing above the foot-lock-joint upon the back part of the fore-leg, and much about the Ankle-bone upon the back part of the hind-leg; this over-straining will cause a great swelling and knotting.

For the Cure: Take Nerve-oil and Turpentine of each a penniworth; mix these together, and you need use it but four several times, and it will be well; let there be an intermitting day for his dressing.

Sinew strain new or old, a most excellent and speedy Remedy, approved of by most Farriers.

The Shackle-veins in the Pattern you must first take blood from; then take a very fat Puppy-dog of two months old or less, kill him, and with all expedition fley him; then bruise his flesh and bones together and lay them upon a cloth, and bind it close to the Sinew strain as warm as you can; but be mindful to take out all the Guts before you bruise the flesh, and be sure that after blood-letting you bathe the sinew-strain with *Aqua Vite*, bathing it in with your hand, and then lay the aforesaid flesh thereunto; wind a cloth two or three times about the leg to keep it on. Some are of opinion that a fat Cat thus killed and bruised is much better, because it draws more and knits better; I shall leave it to your discretion to make choice of which you please.

Scratches,

Scratches.

The Scratches may be as well called by other names as this, *viz.* Mules, Kibes, Rats tails, Crepanches, Pains, &c. they being almost all of one and the same nature and disposition, of all which I have particularly discours'd, however I would not have you judge me either tautological or impertinent if I insist upon this Sorrance called the Scratches; a Sorrance which ingendreth about the heel and Pastern joint, being long, scabby, and dry chaps or rifts growing overthwart on the hinder legs, just from the Fetlock to the end of the Curb: now this Sorrance may grow upon all the fore legs, but is very unusual, the hindmost being the seat of this distemper.

The Causes are either dry melancholy humours ingendred by outward filth, or else by the fumes of Horses dung lying too near him.

The signs are very visible to the sight, and easily to be felt; besides, the hair will stare, divide and curle, and the sorrance will be noisome to the scent.

For the cure hereof, any of those Medicines afore prescribed against the Pains or Mules are good for the Scratches: yet for the better effecting the sound healing and curing this Malady, take what followeth, which are more proper for this Sorrance.

First rub the Sorrance till it bleed, and be raw, then take Hogs grease and black Soap, of each half a pound, and boil these together; then take of Brimstone, Lime, and Gunpowder, of each three Ounces, beat these into fine powder, and put therein, adding as much Soot as will thicken it;

it ; incorporate these well together, and make a black Ointment, and therewith anoint the Sores dayly.

If the Scratches are held incurable, then first bleed him in the Shackle Veins, Spur Veins, and fore Toe Veins, intermitting three days between the bleeding of one Toe and the other ; having so done, make the Sores raw as before, then take a quart of old Urine, and a quart of strong Brine, and put to them eight Ounces of Alom, boil these to a quart, whilst very hot wash the Sores therewith, then take the sperm of Frogs and put it into an Earthen pot, in six or seven days it will look like Oil, wherein you will see little round things ; take both one and the other, and spread it on a cloth, binding it to the Sores, do this pretty often, and it will cause a cure.

For ordinary Scratches, take a penny worth of Verdigrease, a penny worth of Red Lead, and the like quantity of Soap ; mix these together, and apply it like a Plaster, letting it lye three days and three nights, but you must observe to cut the hair close, and make the Sore raw.

Or first shave the hair away, and with an Hair cloth rub the Sore till it be raw, then wash it well with warm stale Urine ; then take black Soap, Mustard and Vinegar, of each an equal quantity, mingling therewith some of an Oxegall, stir these together, and when wrought into a body, rub the place therewith, and bind thereto a cloth, so doing once a day till it be whole.

I shall only recite two Medicines more and I have done, which Receipts are the best I have met with in my life time.

The

The first is, take a quart of white wine Vinegar, and put therein two ounces of the strongest Brazeel, Tobacco in the rowl, opening the leaves, and shredding it in small, boil these together till you find the Vinegar beginneth to consume, then take it off, and strain it very well, then take a quart of Wine more, common Honey and Bay-Salt, of each two Spoonfuls, of Roch Alom the quantity of a Pullers Egge, Red Sage, Rue, Honeysuckle leaves, Yarrow, Plantain, Ribwort, and Bramble leaves, of each an equal quantity, one handful or thereabout, boil these in the Wine till one half be consumed, then strain these also, then set it over the fire again, and let it boil a little space, then take it off, and cool it; when you have so done, keep it close stopped in a glass for your future use; you must wash herewith the Sorrhance, and then put upon it the powder of burnt Alom. This is an excellent remedy for the Scratches, neither doth this ensuing come much short thereof.

About the beginning of the Month of *March* you shall frequently find the Spawn of Toads, in Ditches and standing Pools, take hereof, draining the Water from the said Spawn; after this, distil it, and keep it in a Glass close stopped, and it will be serviceable to you the whole year round: when you use it warm it, and therewith wash the Sorrhance, and it will in a very short time cure it.

Substating of Horses.

Those Horses which are most subject to this Malady are such as have either great round feet, or such as are flat footed, the Cotts whereof being very weak and tender.

V

Now

Now Surbating proceedeth from two several causes : the first is, when the Horse is but newly backt, and shod, the owner by his indiscretion and impatience, immediately rides him a long journey ; now his feet being but tender, and too soon exposed to hard and stony ways, the Horse becomes surbated. The second cause is when an Horse hath naturally bad feet, or that he is ill shod, his shooes either lying too flat, too narrow, too short, and too much worn, or sometimes by going too long bare feet.

The signs are, the Horse will halt much, going creeping and stiff ; if he got his grief by travail, when standing in the stable he will always be removing his feet, not knowing where to place them by reason of their great foreness : this will cause him to lye down much, for his standing will be exceeding painful, and if you feel the Cossins of his hoofs, you will find them very dry, and burn much.

There are several ways to cure Surbating : some take off the Horses shooes, and pare him a very little, then they see whether the shooes be not long, large and hollow enough, if they be not so they make them so, for otherwise they will never be easie, then tack them on again ; and when they have so done they take Hogs grease and Bran boiled together, and being very hot, they stop his feet therewith, covering the Cossin round about therewith, binding all in together with a cloth and a list fastned about the joint, renewing it once a day till it be sound, observing to let him stand dry, and that he drink warm water during the cure,

If

If your Horse surbat or solebat by going without shooes, then first pare him pretty close towards the Toe, then with the point of a Penknife, cut a little hole through the bottom of the hoof, about half an Inch from the Toes end, right over the Vein, and let the Vein bleed a quarter of a pint, then set on his shooes indifferent hollow within the feet; then boil Tar, Tallow, and Turpentine together, and pour it into the surbated foot scalding hot, and stuff in Wool after it to keep it in; once or twice at the farthest so doing will perfectly cure him.

If he surbate in his journey so that you fear he will not perform it, as soon as you perceive it, get him to his Inn with what convenient speed you may, then take two new laid Egges, and having first well picked his fore feet, break them raw into the Soles, and then stop them up with Oxe or Cow dung; or during the time of his journey, if you stop his feet with Cow dung and Vinegar every night, he will be well next morning; nay, if he be not surbated it is good to stop his feet with Cow dung, for it will keep them cool.

Lastly, if your Horses feet be surbated either by travail, too near paring, or any other accident, then take a good lump of course Sugar, and with an hot Iron melt it between the shooe and the foot; and when it is hardned, take Nettles and Bay Salt and stamp them, and so stop up the frog of the foot.

Sinew cramp.

Cramps are the contracting or drawing together the sinews of any one member; the cure is

to rub and chafe the member contracted with Vinegar and common Oil, and after that wrap it all over with wet Hay, rotten Litter, or Woollen cloths, this is a speedy remedy.

Strangle.

The Strangle is not as some have vainly imagined a Quinzie, but an inflammation of the throat, proceeding from cholerick blood which issueth out of the throat Veins into those parts; and this happens by some Cold taken in Winter, or after some excessive labour.

The Sorrance it self is an hard and great swelling between the Horses neather chaps, upon the roots of the tongue; this if not timely remedied will indanger the choaking of the Horse.

The signs hereof are hanging out of the tongue, lolling it to and fro his mouth, the Horses head and eyes will be swoln, and his Temples will appear very hollow, his breath will be very short by reason of the stopping of the passage of his throat.

The Cure of this Distemper according to the judgment of the most experienced is to let him blood in the neck Vein: after that to bring the swelling to suppuration they make a ripening Plaister after this manner: take of Mallows, Linseed, Rue, Smallage, and ground Ivy, of each a quantity alike, boil these together in the grounds of Beer, then adde to it some Oil *de Bay*, and a small quantity of *Dialthea*, taking it off the fire, make thereof a plaister, and lay it to the place grieved, but suffer him not in any case to drink cold Water; this Plaister will ripen and
break

break the swelling, then lay thereunto Bran steep in Wine, renewing it dayly till it be whole.

But of all Cures there is none experience better approveth of than this.

As soon as you see the swelling rise between his chaps, then take a Wax candle, and holding it close to the swelling, burn an hole quite through the skin, then lay thereunto wet Horse-Litter, that will both ripen and break it; then only lay a plaister of Shoemakers Wax thereunto, and that will both draw and heal it.

But if it happen to break inwardly, so that the corruption issueth through his nose, there being no external running of the matter, then perfume his head twice or thrice a day by burning under his Nostrils Frankincense or Masticke, you may use instead thereof a Cole of fire put into wet Hay, causing the smoak thereof to ascend into his head, or else blow the powder of Euphorbium with a quill into his Nostrils. I shall forbear to insert more variety of remedies, since I have insisted on a Malady called the Avives or Vives, for whatsoever Medicine is good for the one is also as good for the other.

Strain in the Pastern joint.

The Fetlock or Pastern joint is often strained by treading awry on some Stone or Cart-rut, nay, sometimes when the Floor of the Stable is uneven he may get it there.

The signs hereof will be very apparent, for the joint will be swoln, and the Horse will halt down-right.

There are three Cures which I only approve of

294 **The Cures of all Outward**

for their safety and expedition, and therefore I shall nominate no other; the first is,

Take three pints of stale Urine, and seeth it about a quarter of an hour; when you find that the foam doth rise apace, then take it from the fire and strain it, and adde thereunto an handful of Tansie, one handful and an half of Mallows, and about three spoonfuls of Honey, with nigh half a pound of Sheeps suet, then set them on the fire, and let them boil together till the herbs become soft; being very hot, lay this Poultice to the joint, and bind it on with a cloth; a fourth dressing will perfectly cure the strain.

The Second is, first to take of Dialthæa half a pound, the like quantity of Nerve Oil; chafe this Oil well in with your hand, continuing so to do, till you have none of the Ointment left; if this should chance to fail your expectations, reinforce the cure, by taking Nerve Oil, black Soap, and Pompillion, of each an equal quantity, and only warm them over the fire, and therewith anoint the joint; I never knew this Medicine deceive me.

Now the last is this: take a Mastive sucking Whelp which is very fat, kill him and take out his guts, then take gray snails and black snails as many as will fill the belly, and sowing it up, roast him at an indifferent soft fire, then balte him with Oil of Spike made yellow with Saffron, with the Oil of Wax, of each two Oils let there be five ounces; let the Dog continue at the fire as long as any one drop will fall, and preserve the droppings in a Gallipot; with this Ointment anoint the joint morning and evening, working it in
very

very hot, holding a red hot flat Iron, to make it sink in.

Sive-bone in the socket of the hoof, or a strain in the Coffin-joint.

If you are doubtful whereabout the grief lieth take up the foot in your hand, and turn it this way and that way, and by his shrinking you will soon find it out; when you have found it, thus you must cure it.

First, take off his shooe, and pare him thin almost to the quick; then make a Pultefs of these ingredients following, and lay it hot to his foot: Take a pint of Brine, wherein Beef or Pork hath been salted, and four ounces of Kitchin-stuff; boil these together near half an hour, then add thereunto some Wheat-flower, and make thereof a Pultefs of an indifferent thickness; then set on the shooe again; put into the sole of the foot a good deal of this Pultefs as hot as can be endured; then stuff the sole with Towe, and splinter it with a flat stick to keep it in; thus let it lie two days and two nights: then take a linnen cloth that is long enough, and spread it all over with this Pultefs scalding hot, wrapping it about the top of the Hoof, the Pastern and up the Leg as far as the swelling goeth, and let this lie as long as the other: do thus, after this manner, four or five times, and he will not after complain of that grief.

Stifling and its hurts how cured.

That Horse is said to be stifled, when the stifling bone, by some accident or other, is thrust out of its place. Now you are to understand, that the stifling-bone is about two inches in length,

lying between the nether end of the Thigh-bone and the upper end of the great Hough-bone of the hinder-leg. Now every hurt in the stifling-bone, whereby the Horse halteth, is not said to be stifling, unless the bone be out, but only hurt in the stiffl.

The symptoms of his being stifled are, the bone will stick out more on the one side than the other, and in his halting he only dare touch the ground with his Toe.

Cure him thus : Set a Patten-shoe on his sound foot, and so turn him to grass, that he may be compell'd to tread upon his lame foot: thus straining his foot will reduce the Stifling-bone to its proper place.

If a Patten-shoe is not in readines, take a plain Surcingle, and with it garter up the Horses sound Leg three fingers above the Hamm upon his main great Sinew, so strait as you with anothers assistance can draw it together, then turn him loose where he may have freedom to walk ; thus in forty hours his Leg will be as sound as ever. Now by reason that the place will be much swelled, rub very well the gartered place with fresh butter.

Or thus you may do ; as soon as you perceive the Stifling-bone is out of its proper place, then take your Horse to some deep Pond, Mill-pool or River that hath an easie entrance, and swim him up and down for half an hour, till he sweat behind the ears, at which time, or before, the bone will be reduced to its natural place. Thus you may do if your Horse should chance to be stifled on the Rode, and that your occasions will

will not permit you to stay for any longer Cure.

Or thus you may do : after swimming, peg him as soon as he cometh into the Stable, and do so always as long as he standeth in the house, and when he is dry rub in an ounce of the Oil of Turpentine and as much strong Beer shaken together in a Glass; it will cause it to swell for the present, however it is an admirable and most approved Remedy for the Stifle.

Note that swimming is not good for any strain, but only to bring a Stifle-bone right into its place again.

If it so happens that your Horse is not stifled, but only hurt in the Stifle, so that the bone is not out but only swelled thereabout; then take a pound and a half of Bole-armoniack, three pints of red Wine-Vinegar, eight Eggs beaten, shells and all, three penniworth of English Honey, and as much Venice Turpentine, three pints of flower, and more than a good handful of Bay-salt; incorporate these well together and put them into a pot, keeping it close one night, the next morning dress your Horse therewith, and continue so doing once a day for eleven days together. *Probatum est.*

Shedding of Hair in the Mane.

There are a certain sort of little worms which breed in the Mane, which feeding on and fretting the hair thereof, cause it to shed and fall from the Horse.

I know no better Cure than to take black Soap and therewith first anoint the Mane and Crest; after that, make a strong Lye of stale Urine and
Ash.

Ash-ashes and wash the Mane and Crest therewith, and it will infallibly kill them.

Scrupin or a through Splint on both sides the Leg.

You must in the first place cast your Horse, then take a Bed-staff or a stick of that bigness; then beat and bruise therewith the Splint on both sides; having beaten it soft, take 12 penniworth of the Oil of Riggum, and rub it on no other place but the Splint; then raise him, and tie up his head three or four hours to the Rack, tying up also his contrary leg, for the smart and pain thereof will make him very unruly; this will take off the hair for the present, but it will quickly grow again without alteration of colour.

Let the Splint be never so big, and dress him after this manner, in seven days the Cure will be accomplish'd: for a small Splint or a Blood-splint, once dressing will serve the turn: this is approved of by all for an excellent remedy.

Stumbling.

Stumbling in an Horse is so ill a property, that I know not what well can be worse; for a man continually rides in fear of breaking his neck. This infirmity happens many ways, and those either naturally or accidentally.

Naturally, when the sinews of the forelegs are somewhat strait, so that the Horse is incapacitated to use his limbs with that dexterity and agility he ought.

Accidentally an Horse is given to stumbling, by a Splint, Ridg-bone, Wind-galls or some hurts in the foot, as foundred, prick'd, gravelled, sinew-sprained, shoulder-wrenched, or pinch'd in the Withers.

The

The best Cure for natural Stumbling is to cut a slit upon the very top of the Nose, and with your Cornet take up the two great Sinews, which there reside, and cut them asunder, and after heal up the place with some healing medicaments; this will give him the perfect use of his legs in so ample a manner, as that he will never trip or stumble after, unless by some great chance.

Neither will you do amiss, if you breed a young Horse or purchase one, immediately after backing him, to cut him of the Cords, that is, these two great Sinews, and you will find the benefit ever after, mentioned in the aforesaid Cure of Stumbling.

But if his stumbling happens accidentally, according to the Causes already declared; then take of Hogs-grease one pound, of fresh Butter, *Althææ* and of Oil de Bay of each eight ounces; mix these, and work them together, and therewith anoint and chafe the legs and sinews of the Horse thrice a day, every third day, and be sure that his shooes be wide enough, especially at the heels.

The sinews being well suppled, you may put him also out of the Cords.

Where note that these Cords are flat white Sinews lying under a red film, extending themselves from the top of the nose to the hind-legs, which when you shall take up with your Corner, and having hold of them, if you will pull hard, you may almost pull the Horses hind-legs to his fore-legs.

*Stars artificial how to make of all sorts, and first
of the white Star.*

If your Horse be well coloured, and, for a further ornament to his body, you would have a Star that is white in his forehead, you must make use of Art in this manner : Take Sheeps-milk and set it over the fire, when it is well sodden, take a cloth and dip therein ; then take it out of the milk boiling hot, and clap it to the Horse's forehead, doing it so often till you can rub off the hair with your finger ; after this, every day, lay some milk to the bald place lukewarm, till the hair grow again.

If that will not do this, use this infallible experiment : Take a sharp long Bodkin, and as long as you would have the Star, so far upwards thrust the Bodkin between the skin and the bone, hollowing the skin as you thrust it ; then take some Lead, and make it into the same form the Bodkin is of, and having withdrawn your Bodkin, let the Lead in the same hole supply its place ; then thrust in the Bodkin cross-wise underneath the Lead, and put in some more Lead into that place, in such sort that it may represent a perfect cross ; then take Pack-thread and put it underneath the four corners of the Lead, and by drawing it strongly you will contract the hollow skin to a purse ; having drawn it well together, let it rest a day and a night, in which time the skin will be so deadned, that it will not, when loosned, return to its former place ; after this remove the Leaden pins, and with your hand close the skin to the forehead ; in a little time after this you will perceive the hair to fall off, but
assure

assure your self the next hair which appeareth will be white.

This I know true likewise by my own experience; take a Crab and roast it, and, being excessive hot, bind it to that part of the Horse which you would have white; this will infallibly scald away the old hair, and the new hair that cometh will be white.

Secondly, how to make a black Star.

This black Star, you are to understand, is to be made on a white Horse, which will be very remarkable, and thus you must do it: Take the rust of Iron, Galls and Vitriol, and pound them in a Mortar with Sallet-oil, and herewith anoint the place, and it will convert white hair into coal black colour.

I have been told that this will do as well, though I never tried it: Take four scruples of the wood of Oleander beaten to powder, and one scruple of Ink; then with an indifferent quantity of Sheeps-suet work them together, and herewith anoint the designed part, and this will effect your purpose.

Thirdly and Lastly, how to make an artificial red Star in the forehead of an Horse.

Take of *Aqua Vitæ* one quartern, of *Aqua fortis* one Ounce and a half, and of Silver to the value of one and twenty pence; put them into a Glass and shake them well together, and therewith anoint the place very well; this in an instant will convert what ever the colour of the hair be, into a perfect red; but this will continue no longer than till the casting of the hair; so that if you desire a continuance, you must renew it.

Sis-

Sit-fast.

The Sit-fast or Stick-fast, is called by the French *Mal de la Cron*; it is an hard horny knob, growing in an Horses skin under the Saddle, and is dead like a hard piece of Leather: It proceedeth from some old Saddle-gall or bruise, which not impostumating the skin falleth dead and sticketh to the flesh.

That you may effect the Cure, take the green outward leaves of a Cabbage; then take tried Hogs-grease and stamp them together, making thereof an Ointment; herewith anoint his back very well, chafing it in, and it would not be amiss to clap on his Saddle and immediately ride him.

But in my opinion this is the best and speediest Cure; first anoint this dead skin with Hogs-grease, to supple and mollifie it; then pull up this skin, and with a sharp Pen-knife cut it away from the sound flesh; if after this the cavity appear deep, pour every morning and evening into it Butter melted hot, and this will eaven the flesh; then dry and skin it with the powder of Honey and Lime mingled together.

Swaying in the Back.

Swaying in the back is occasioned by great burthens, slip or wrench in the lower part of his back, below his short Ribs and directly between his Fillets.

The signs are, when the Horse is laid he will rise with much difficulty, besides his going will be uneven, swaying sometimes backwards, sometimes sidelong

The Cure is, first to cover the Horses back
with

with a Sheeps-skin, newly fleyed off, laying the fleshy side on; then lay thereon a good warm cloth, letting the Sheep-skin lie so long till it begin to corrupt; then apply a fresh one, continuing so to do twenty days; this I have tried, but have not found it so successful, but that I was forced to use this Remedy, which never failed me.

First, draw his back on both sides of the ridge from the pitch of the Buttock, unto an handful within the Saddle, and so again overthwart; let the lines be an inch distance one from the other, and let not the strokes be otherwise burnt but only to look yellow: having so done lay on this Plaster.

Take of Pitch half a pound, of Tar half a pint, of Rozin and Bole-armoniack of each a quarter of a pound beaten into fine powder; boil these together stirring them till they are thoroughly incorporated, then being luke-warm, daub all the burning therewith very thick; after this take flux of the Horse's colour, and daub as many on as will stick; remove it not, but let it fall off spontaneously: if the season will permit turn him to grass.

Spurgalling how remedied.

Spurgalling to be sure happens no other way than by the indiscretion of a digging Horseman. The signs are plain to be seen and felt: the Cure is not difficult, only take Urine and Salt, Water and Salt, or warm Vinegar alone, or bind unto the Spur-gall the tops of Nettle-leaves and any of these will perfectly cure him.

Swelling

Swelling of the Cods.

This swelling is always accompanied with an inflammation, and happens to the Stones of an Horse several ways, viz. either by the bite of an Horse or some venomous beast, by a blow, or by a strain; nay it hath been found to have happened after sickness or surfeit with cold, being a sign of his recovery; if so, the usual way of curing it is by taking of Bean-flower, Wheat-meal, Cummin and Hogs grease of each an equal quantity, and therewith Plaister his Cods or Stones.

Sometimes again this swelling proceedeth from rankness of seed, and the Symptom thereof is the great sliminess of his Yard; if so, then get any Mare, and let him first cover her, then keep him without Provender, and bleed him above the great Vein which is between his lips; having so done, take three or four hard Eggs, and some of his own dung and pound them together, making thereof a Plaister, with which cover his Cods; but be sure that every day you wash them with cold water, till the swelling come down.

But if by accident, as by stroke, strain, &c. his Cods and Stones do swell, then follow this Rule, which the French prescribe:

Take the roots of wild Cowcumber and Salt, and boil them, and with the water bathe the Cods, after this anoint them with an unguent made of Oil, Goats-grease and the white of an Egg, or an ointment made of Chalk, Potters-earth, Ox-dung, Cummin-water and Vinegar mingled together; after this, let him bleed in the Flank-veins.

Selender.

Selender.

There is very little discrepency between the Selender and Malander, only that the Selender breedeth on the bending of the bough in the Leg behind, whereas the Malander afflicteth the bending of the Leg before; the Symptoms of the one bear an analogy with the signs of the other, and, to speak the truth, there is no difference in the Cure; however, for variety sake, take this one Receipt more.

Take fresh Butter, Bay-salt and Frankincense both pulverized very finely, and boil these together; then take a stick and tie a rag about it, and dip it into this Ointment scalding hot, and apply it to the Selender three mornings together; after this, heal it up, and renew the hair by anointing it with Mallows and fresh Butter.

Surfeited and Grease-molten.

In the first place, my advice is, to take blood from the Horse; then give him this Purgation.

Take of *Trifora magna*, and *Filonio Persico* of each half an ounce, Cassia one ounce, Syrop of Violets two ounces; dissolve these in *Mel Rosarum* four ounces: then put these well mixed together into an Horn, and give it him in a morning fasting; then ride him gently two or three miles, bringing him into the Stable, let him stand upon the Trench, somewhat better than an hour; after this give him a sweet Mash; having swallowed that, then give him drie Oats, clean and well sifted, and lastly give him some sweet Hay.

Be sure to give him no cold water in eight or

306 **The Cures of all Outward**

nine days, after that time you may, but with this caution, when ever you let him drink cold water, that you immediately exercise him with moderation, so far as not to make him sweat.

String-bait.

The String-halt is a Malady that is most incident to Horses of the greatest metal, and by some it is called the *Mary Hinchcho..*

It is an ill-favoured distemper, and frequently happens by an Horses taking sudden cold after a great heat, and most commonly happens to the hinder Legs; this cold comes by washing him too soon, whereby the blood and sinews being stupified, the Horse is deprived of the sense and feeling of that member it seizeth.

The signs are apparent to the eye, and very uncomely it appeareth; for he snatcheth up his leg much higher than the other, twitching it up in such manner as if he trod on needles, or that the ground was so hot it scalded his foot.

The Cure is, to take up the middle Vein above the Thigh, and underneath the same, under which Vein there lieth a string, which with a sharp Knife cut away; then anoint him with Butter and Salt, or anoint him with this Ointment following.

Take of the Oil of Worms and Oil of Petroleum, of the Oil of Nerval, of Piece-grease made of the shreds of Shooe-makers Leather, and of Oil of Spike of each one ounce, of *London-Treacle* two ounces, and of Hogs-grease one pound; melt all these together, then take it off the fire and stir it till it be cold; with this anoint the string-halt

halt once every day; then wisp him up with a soft thumb-band of Hay from the Pastern to the top of the hoof; do thus eight days together, and when you anoint him, hold an hot Fire-pan to the grievance, that the ointment may sink in the better; after this keep him warm, and do not ride him in a month after so as to make him sweat: this will make him both do well and go well.

Stripe or blow upon the Eye of an Horse.

A mischance may so happen, that the Eye of an Horse by a rod or whip may sustain very much detriment; and I have known the like evil proceeding from Horses playing with each other or fighting.

There are abundance of Receipts for the Cure of this accidental Malady in an Horse's Eye; wherefore, to avoid prolixity, I shall only nominate some of the best Remedies.

First let him blood on the Eye-vein; then take strong Nettles with a little Beer, & bruising them, strain them, and squirt a little of the liquor into his eye twice or thrice together; then take the fine powder of Sandevour and blow some thereof into his Eyes, then cloath well his Eye that no cold or air may come at it; if there be a necessity that you must ride him, then put before his Eye a warm woollen cloth, and it will do him not much harm.

Now if the Horses Eye-brows be very sore, then take Soap-water and cold water mixt together and wash the Eye-brows therewith; but if you perceive but little amendment by that means, then bleed him in the Temple-veins, if

herub his Eyes, then bleed him in the Veins under his Eyes, and wash his Eyes with cold Soap-water

The best way, I think, is to anoint the fore Eye three or four days together with Capon-grease, which will mollifie; then take live Honey, and with a feather wipe the inside of the Eye, or joyn the juice of Plantain with your live Honey.

Lastly, if his Eye look red by the stripe or blow, then take red Lead and Sallet-oil, and having mingled them well together, apply it Plaister-wise unto it.

Swelling of the Neck after Phlebotomy.

There is a four fold cause of the swelling of an Horse's Neck after breathing a Vein.

1. When the Vein is struck through, so that some of the blood getting between the flesh and the Vein, it there putrefieth and corrupteth, and by that means is ingendered an Impostumation.

2. It hapneth sometimes by the carelesness of a slovenly Farrier, who without looking on his Fleim, having not let blood in a pretty while, never observed that it was rusty, and so striking the Vein therewith, the Vein rankleth; and this I can assure you is very dangerous.

3. This may come by cold suddenly striking into the Orifice.

4. And lastly, by permitting the Horse, too soon after blood-letting, to hang down his head to feed or graze; this will cause an attraction or resorting of humours to that place, which in a very short time will turn to an Impostume.

You

You need no other Cure for it but this : take Oil of Camomile and warm it, then therewith anoint the swelling ; then lay upon it some Hay wet in water, so binding it, that it may not easily fall off ; put fresh wet Hay or Litter every day for six or seven days, in which time it will be either disclt or brought to suppuration ; if brought to an head and throughly ripened , then with your Lancet lay it open and let out the corruption ; having cleansed it very well, take flax and dip it in Turpentine and Hogs-grease melted together, tenting it therewith, and by dressing it thus every day, it will be whole and perfectly cured.

Screw.

This Screw is no more but a puzzling name for the Splint, and indeed is no more in its nature and qualification, only with this difference as to their location, the Splint being ever on the inside of the Leg, and the screw on the outside, which is less dangerous than the other.

Now by reason that several Horses have been found and known by several to have had at one and the same time, and upon the same leg Leg, both these Splints diametrically opposite one to the other, some have entertained an opinion so absurd and ridiculous, that they have thought they have gone through the Horse's Legs, and from hence have been vainly intitled the thorough-splint , and thence concluding it incurable.

Now to confute the ignorance of such, and for the better information of the Reader's judgment, be pleased to take notice, that the Shin bone is

310 **The Cures of all Outward**

hollow and filled with Marrow, so that there can nothing grow through it, but it must of necessity destroy the Marrow, and so by consequence the bone can no longer hold, but must presently break in sunder, considering that so weak a spongy substance as a Splint shall possess the whole strength of the Leg; I hope what is here expressed will convince every knowing person of this gross and ridiculous vulgar Errour.

Now since the Screw is made appear to be the same with the Splint, certainly the Cure must also be the same; wherefore I refer you to the foregoing Section of the Splint and its Remedies.

Shackle-gall.

The Shackle-gall, or Gall in the Pastern, on the Heel or upon the Cronet is often seen in those Countries which are Champain, as *Dorsetshire, Wiltshire, &c.* and where Horses are much used to the Teather; or this Malady may happen by the Shackle-lock.

In this case you must take Verdigrise and Honey of each an equal quantity, and boil them together till a moiety be consumed, at which time, or thereabout, this composition will look red; then take it off the fire and set it a cooling, after that take herof and anoint the sore every day twice, strowing thereon some flox that are chopt, to keep on the Salve; continue thus doing till it be whole: this Medicine is most sovereign for the Shackle-gall, but principally good for the Scratches.

Suppositories of all sorts, with their uses.

There are certain malignant humours in the body of an Horse, which the strength of Nature

ture cannot expel, and therefore must be discharged three several ways by Art, either by Potion, Clyster or Suppository; of the two first I have already succinctly discoursed, and therefore I shall only treat of the last which is a Suppository, and this Suppository is no more than an Handmaid or Preparative to a Clyster; for although the nature of a Clyster is to open, yet can it not perform its office many times, by reason of the hardness of the Excrements, by reason of a dry, hot and collicive constitution; and therefore, to soften the Guts, there ought to be as a forerunner, the application of a Suppository, before either Potion or Clyster be administered.

Thus as we have related the Nature and use of Suppositories, so in the next place it will be requisite to give you some Receipts in the due forming and composing any Suppository.

The first and most gentle of all Suppositories is this: Take a great Candle, of four to the pound, and cut it into twain; then take the lower or bigger part and anoint it with fresh Butter, and so thrust it into his Fundament; as soon as you have so convey'd it, hold his Tail to his Tuel three quarters of an hour, by which time the Candle will be melted; after this let loose his Tail, and ride him presently, I mean trot him up and down till he begin to evacuate; thus by exercising him after the administration of the Suppository, you will cause it to work the more kindly.

But if so be your Horses constitution be so weakned and debilitated that you durst not give him any purging Medicament, then take of Salt-

312 The Cures of all Outward

Nitre three ounces, of Honey half a pound, of Wheat-flower, Anniseeds finely powdered, of each two ounces; boil these together to a consistency, and make it into Suppositories, and convey one of them at a time into the body of the Horse, as you were before directed, giving him the same manner of exercise.

If you would purge Phlegm, this is a most singular and approved way: Take a piece of Castile-soap, and with your knife shape it into the usual form of a Suppository, and apply it according to the former directions.

Now since I have spoken of the Purgation of Phlegm, give me leave to proceed in my giving instructions, by such like means, how to correct the malignity or redundancy of the other three humours or Constitutions.

And first as for Choler, use this Suppository: take of Saven an indifferent quantity, of Staves-aker and Salt of each two ounces; Stamp these well together, and boil them in so much Honey as may make them of that thickness fit for the composition of Suppositories, and at your pleasure apply them as before.

For Melancholy, you may only take an angry red Onion, and having pilled and jagged it cross-wise with your knife, thrust it into his Fundament, using him in the same manner as before prescribed.

Lastly, if your Horse's body be over-heated by superfluity of blood, then take a pint of ordinary Honey, and boil it so thick as it is fit to be made into Suppositories; this will so refrigerate and cool his body, that it will reduce it into an orderly temper.

Observe

Observe that in your administration of all Suppositories, Clysters, or Potions, you choose the morning fasting for that work, that he drink no cold water, but warm Mashes; and lastly, that your Horse be raked before administration of such like Purgation.

The Tongue of an Horse hurt, how cured.

It is impossible to describe how many ways the Tongue of an Horse may become hurt and detrimented; the usual causes are an Halter, or being fiery or head strong by holding a stiff Rein on a Bit.

The common cure is to take the juice of Celandine and though the Tongue be cut half way through, yet if you wash it therewith ten or eleven days it will perfectly heal it, for this Celandine conglutinates after a wonderful manner, and will cement the lips of a wound especially in the Tongue very speedily.

Or you may use this remedy which I was taught by a very ancient French Farrier, and one that was highly esteemed for his skill in the Reign of King Charles the first of ever blessed memory; it is thus: take an ounce of Arman, and roast it till it be red hot, then take it and pulverize it very finely; having so done, take six Spoonfuls of life Honey, of White-Wine one quart, take the powder and mix them together, then set it over the fire, and all the while it is boiling be sure to stir it well, then take it off and cool it, and wash the Tongue therewith twice a day.

Theriacum or Unguentum Theriacum, how to make it, with a character of its Virtues and uses.

This is an Ointment so soveraign that I know not what is better for any ach in the joints, griefs in the Hip, Stifling place, Legs, Shoulders, Pastern, or any other part of the Leg whereby the Horse is compelled to go lame; only you must except the back Sinew strain; the way of making this *Unguentum Theriacum* is thus.

Take of Nerve Oil, of Oil of Pampbilion and of black Soap, of each four Ounces, of tried Hogs grease one pound, melt these, then adde therewith a groats worth of ordinary Treacle, then take it from the fire, and stir it till it be cold, and then its colour will be dunnish, and so keep it for your use.

This you must chafe into the part grieved, or make it sink in with a hot flat bar of Iron, as you do other Ointments:

Tetter or Ring worm.

This Tetter is called by the French the Flying worm, because the Sorrance is so much given to spread it self; the signs are apparent.

The Cure is, take the roots of *Enula Campana* and red Dock, of each an equal quantity, slice them thin, and having gotten somewhat above a pottle of Urine, put them therein, with Bay Salt the quantity of two handfuls, let it boil till the Moity be consumed, then take it from the fire, and being very hot wash the Sorrance therewith, thus doing six mornings together will kill the Tetter.

Thorns in the foot, how to draw out.

Take house Snails by some called *Dodmonds*,
and

and boil them in Butter, and apply them to the foot, and they will extract or draw out any Thorn or Nail whatsoever ; of the same efficacy and power are the roots of Reeds bruised, and in like manner applied.

To tame an unruly Horse that will not stand still to be drencht or drest of any grief.

Take a little sharp flint stone, and put it into one of his ears, then grasp the Ear hard with your hand ; if he will not be quiet with one, then put the like stone into the other Ear, and that will make him stand as still as a Lamb.

Truncheons, what they are, and how to kill.

Some are of the opinion that Truncheons and the Bots are one sort of Vermin, but they erre in their judgment that so believe them, for their colour is different, and so is their abode; the Bots dwelling in the great Gut adjoining to the fundament, and the other in the Maw only.

The Truncheons are a thick short worm, having black and hard heads, and there is no way to remove them but by Physick, to which end, take a quart of sweet Wort, or strong new Ale, a quarter of a pound of Fern roots, of Saven half a pound, of Stone-crop, stamp them together, and put to them of Brimstone and of Soot of each two spoonfuls, both well powdred, then let these be steeped in Ale two hours, then strain it, and give him of this two hornfuls, then bridle him, and tye him up to the Rack two hours, the next day give him these purging Pills, take of Lard one pound, laying it in water two hours, then take nothing but the pure fat thereof and beat it in a StoneMortar, and put thereto of Anniseeds, Liquorish

rish and Fenugreek, all made into powder, of each half an ounce, Aloes powdred two drachms, and of Agarick one ounce, incorporate these together, and of the Mass make six Pills of equal bigness, the Horse having fasted over night give him three in the morning, the Pills being first anointed with Honey, then keep him warm, and at night let him have a sweet Mash; three days after give him the other three Pills, and keep him warm as before.

These Pills will so purge the bad humours which bred and nourished these worms, that the Horse will be perfectly freed from them of what kind soever they be, whether Bots, Trunchions, or Maw worms; you shall find them voided in his Excrements, the most part of them still living.

Tails of Horses how to cut, or the way of making Curtails.

Forreign Nations by reason of their not exposing their Horses to so much labour and hardship as the *English* are accustomed to do, seldom cut their Horses Tails as we use to do. Neither are we wanting of reason for so doing, for we entertain an opinion, and not without good grounds, that an Horses chine is much stronger by cutting his Tail; now since our Horses backs are so much employed in carrying great burthens, it is very requisite that they be dockt with all convenience.

The manner is thus: first you shall grope with your finger and your thumb till you find the third joint from the setting on the Horses Tail, having found it, raise up all the hair, and turn it backward,

ward, then take a small strong Cord and tye it about that joint, and when you and another have pulled it with all your strength three or four times, make fast the ends of the Cord, then take a piece of wood whose end is smooth and even, of equal height with the strunt of the Horses Tail (and having trammelled all his four legs so that he cannot stir) set it between the Horses hinder legs, and lay his Tail thereupon, then taking a strong sharp knife made for that purpose, set the edge thereof as near as you can between the fourth and fifth joint, then with a great Smiths hammer strike upon the back of the knife and so cut the Tail asunder; if blood issue hereupon you must tye the Cord again; if not, the Cord was well tyed; then take a round Iron of the compass of the fleshy part of the Horses Tail, and being red hot clap it so to the Tail, that the bone may go through the cavity of the head of the Iron: in the searing you will see the ends of the Veins start out, however go on in searing the Tail till you think the flesh is mortified enough, and when you think the blood cannot break through the burning then loose the Cord; after this anoint it with Hogs grease and Turpentine till the sore be healed.

Vives vide Avives.

Ver-volant or Ring worm.

Ver-volant or Flying Worm is a French appellation given to that Sorrhance which we call a Tetter or Ring worm.

It is caused by much heat in the blood, from whence is bred a sharp bilious humour, and thence cometh this Ver-volant or Ring worm: it most

most usually afflicteth the Rump, extending it self into the Tail, and frequently turns into a Canker, not but that sometimes it seizeth on other parts of the body, so tormenting him with an intollerable Itch that by rubbing the part violently against whatsoever he can come near, he will fetch off not only the hair but skin and flesh too.

The signs are the falling away of his hair, his continual scrubbing, and if gotten into the Tail, by a Scab, which if pickt will run with thin kind of water, and if let alone will canker every joint : for the prevention hereof,

Take of Precipitate two drachms, and put it into a small Vial with water, somewhat more than will cover the powder, keeping it close stopped, and herewith anoint the Sorrance every day, and you shall not doubt a cure.

Here note that after every time washing the fore you stop your Vial very close, shaking it well, and so set it by till the next dressing. If you find the cure goeth but slowly on, then wash it twice a day.

But if this Tetter, Ring worm, or Ver-volant have seized any fleshy part, then take the juice of Southern-wood, Maudlin, and Rue, of each an equal quantity stamped and strained, and wash well and bathe the place therewith every day twice till it be perfectly cured.

Venom drank how to cure.

An Horse may swallow poison divers ways, as by drinking Horse-leeches, by licking poisonous Spittle off the grass, by eating Hens-Dung, licking up a Feather and the like, you shall know
his

his distemper by these three signs, either panting, swelling or scouring.

For the Cure take Sow thistle an herb so called, and having dried it, beat it into powder, and take three spoonfuls thereof into a pint of Ale, and give it the Horse to drink.

Veins taken up why and for what causes.

It is the opinion of most skilful Farriers that some Maladies will never be cured but by the taking up of Veins; for if not, those Veins will so feed the Sorrhance, that unless the passage of those malignant humours be stopped the cure will never be effected.

Now as the taking up of Veins hinders the progress of a Sorrhance, so it prevents the coming of some, which if seizing the part would never be cured without it. For Example, the taking up the Thigh Veins will send packing Spavens, Splints, Curbs, Kibed Heels, swelled Legs, Scratches, Malenders, and the like: besides it easeth all pains, aches, strains, and stiffness in the limbs.

Take up the Shackle Veins, and it preventeth the Quitter bone, Ring bone, Swelling in the lower joints, Foundrings, and the like.

Wherefore these premises considered, they are much to blame who exclaim against the taking up the Veins, betraying rather their own ignorance and want of experience than any just fault in the exercise thereof.

Wolfs teeth.

The Wolfs teeth are two extraordinary teeth, being small, and growing in the upper jaws, next unto the great grinding teeth, which are so painful

ful and troublesome to an Horse that he cannot indure to chaw his meat, but is forced either to let it fall out of his mouth, or else to retain it in his mouth half chewed.

The Cure is thus: first cause the Horses head to be tied up so high to some beam or rafter, and his mouth opened with a cord so wide, that you may with much ease see every part thereof, then take an instrument made like a Carpenters Gouge, and with your left hand set the edge of the tool at the foot of the Wolfs teeth on the out side of the jaw, turning the hollow side of the Tool downwards, holding your hand steadily, so that the tool may neither slip nor swerve from the Teeth aforesaid; then having a Mallet in your right hand, strike a strong stroke upon the head of the Tool, so that thereby you may loosen the Teeth, and bend them inward, then straining the midst of your Tool upon the Horses neather jaw, wrinch the Tooth outward, with the hollow side of the said Tool, and so thrust it clean out of his head, which done, serve the other Wools tooth on the other side in like manner, and fill up the empty holes with Salt finely brayed.

But this is a long tedious way, and I cannot approve of it in my judgment to come near this way I am going to prescribe, which I have frequently experimented; and that is, when you have tied up your Horses head, or if you please you may cast him, then open his mouth, and with a very sharp File, file the Wools teeth as smooth as is possible, and then only wash his mouth with a little Allom water.

Wild-fire.

This Wild-fire is a very dangerous Malady, and difficultly to be cured : before I met with an *Italian* I made several attempts to cure it, but all to no purpose ; but having made tryal of his Receipt I found it wonderfully successful ; it is made after this manner.

Take of living Toads five, the blackest and largest can be found, four Moles living, seven or eight old Shooe soles, and about forty heads of Garlick unpilled, with their heads and roots remaining, then take four pound of the Smoakiest and leanest Martlemas Beef, also take five quarts of Oats, and two pound of very old Woollen rags, with a good quantity of Swallows Dung, and half a dozen living Swallows, put all these ingredients into a new Earthen pot, big enough to contain them ; having so done, lute up the pot so close, that no air may enter.

Now take your pot, and carry it into some void place, and there make a great fire round about it, and keep the fire about it till it be red hot, continuing the fire about it after it is red hot for near upon an hour, letting the fire to go out of it self, letting the pot to stand therein till it be thoroughly cold ; then take out what is contained therein, and put it into a great Trough so placed where no wind may come, covering the trough with a Cloth ; then stamp it well with a pound of unslaked Lime, but let him that stamps it have a care of his eyes, and therefore a glass case would tend very much to their preservation, having reduced it into fine powder, searce it through an hair cloth, and so preserve the finest of the powder in a Gallipot for your future use.

This by my own experience I have found a sovereign remedy against all Wild fires, Running Sorrancess, and Ulcers whatsoever, but you must be cautious of applying it to fleshy places, where Veins and Sinews be, for it will burn them asunder.

Warts in an Horses Eye.

I have often seen these Warts or fleshy Excretions, growing sometimes upon the Eye, and sometimes upon the inside of the Eye lids.

This distemper is occasioned by a thick flegm falling down into the Eye, by keeping an Horse too long in a dark Stable, which in continuance of time will bring the Eye of the Horse to a Consumption, making it grow little.

You must take this Sorrancess in time, by taking Roch Allom, and burn it on a Tile stone, and then put as much white Copperas thereunto unburnt, and grind them to powder, then lay a little of that powder just upon the Wart, do this every day, and in a short time the Wart will be consumed.

Wens, or other Excretions in the Flesh, how to remove.

A Wen is an hard Excretion rising out of the flesh, being somewhat firm externally, but internally towards the bottom there lodgeth putrefaction.

The Causes hereof are several, but the most usual are some hurt, stroke, bruise, blow, or knock of a stone; there need no other signs than the apparent swelling.

Asto the Cure, if you can, tye a thread about it, and that will eat it off; but if you cannot come

come to tye any such thing, then take your Incision knife and cut it a-crois into four equal quarters to the very bottom, but have a care you cut neither Vein nor Sinew, then burn off the four quarters with your Cauterizing Iron, then heal the place with your afore prescribed healing Salve.

There are again Warts or Wens which grow about the Saddle skirts, growing betwixt two ribs, and do always proceed from old bruises.

The usual way of curing them is dayly to anoint them with Hogs grease for eight or nine days, sometimes bathing them with Wine Lees; if they come to no head in that time then launce them downward, and tent them with Turpentine well washed, Yolks of Eggs, and Saffron well incorporated together, renewing the tent every day till the sore be compleatly healed.

But if the Wart be Spongy, you must take another course; but first let us look into the nature hereof; a Malady must be first known what it is, before you can apply a proper remedy.

A Spongy Wart then is a kind of Wen, which sometimes appeareth very big, at other times but small, but then they are in number many, growing in Clusters.

They are occasioned by very malignant blood, such as is very bad and rank. Where note that my advice is never to breed of that Stallion or Mare which is naturally inclined to them; for as they themselves will never be free from them, though the utmost of Art is used to remove them,

yet still as they are displanted in one place they will grow in another, so they will convey to their breed what doth afflict them by the indisposition of their own blood.

Now as to the Cure : first purge the Horse well ; then take blood from the Master-vein , which you find is the greatest nourisher of them ; if the Wart or Wen be a pretty distance from the skin , then take two of the longest hairs of his Tail, and tie about it as fast as possibly you may, so that they may not slip, in four or five days they will eat the Wen quite off ; which done , take the powder of Verdigrise and strow upon the root of the Wen or Wart, and that will absolutely destroy the seed of its further growth ; then take the green Salve afore specified and heal the Sorrance ; but if you cannot come to tie it in the manner aforesaid , then burn it off and then take away the Fire by Turpentine and Hogs-grease.

Wounds of all sorts how cured whether new or old.

Before I give you the several remedies proper to every wound, it will be very requisite to give you an exact account what wounds are in general, & they are, according to the opinion of the most expert and understanding Farriers, *Solutio Continui*, or the Whole parted or divided. Now the Latins make a difference between *continuus* and *contiguus*, for continuity is the flesh of either Lip, contiguity is when both Lips are closed ; again, if there be no solution or division, it is then rather called a Contusion than a Wound ; a Contusion or bruise is made with a blunt weapon,
Wounds

Wounds with sharp or piercing; yet if any part of the whole be broken though with an Instrument that is blunt, it may properly go under the denomination of a Wound.

Of Wounds some be hollow, others deep and hollow; if a Wound happen in a fleshy part, so that no Sinew, Vein, Artery, Ligament, Tendon or Nerve be lacerated, then it is called a Simple wound, or if a bone be not fractured it is the like; but if a bone be broke or a Vein, Sinew, &c. torn, as well as the whole divided, then it is called a Compound Wound, which is much more dangerous and difficult to cure than the former.

If then an Horse hath received a Wound in his head, or in any other part of his body which is full of Bones, Sinews, Gristles, &c. then, according to the opinion of the most judicious, wash the Wound well with white Wine vinegar warmed, and whilst you are dressing the Wound, keep it warm with clothes dipped in white Wine; after this, take your Probe and search the depth of the Wound therewith, letting as little air as you can to enter into the orifice thereof; having so done, take of Turpentine, *Mel Rosarum*, Oil of Roses of each four ounces, with a little unwrought Wax, and having melted these together, stir them well that they may be the better incorporated; if it be a Cut only, make a round Plegant of soft Towe, of that thickness and length which may not only reach the bottom, but fill up the Cavity: where note, make your Plegant Taper-wise; for the bottom of the Wound is not so wide as the mouth or top thereof.

326 The Cures of all Outward

If the Wound be long and large, then with a stitching-quill and a needful of fine Crimson silk, draw the lips thereof together, whereby the Wound will not only heal sooner, but will leave a less scar or eye-fore.

But if the hurt bear the resemblance of a narrow hole, then make a stiff Tent of lint, so long as may reach the utmost extent of the Wound; and this Tent you must dip in the foresaid Ointment before you put it in, then bolster the same with a little Lint or Towe: having so done, lay over your Plegants and Tents a Plaister made of Pitch, Rozin, Maltich, Turpentine and Hogs-grease of each as much as you think fit, spreading it well on Leather and cover the Wound therewith.

- If it so happen that the mouth of the Wound be not so wide that the internal corruption may have a free passage, you may (if Sinews, Veins, or Nerves do not obstruct) lay it more open with your Lancet or Incision-knife.

If the hole be deep and in such a place that you dare not cut it, then be sure you make your Tent full as big as the cavity is wide; let the composition thereof be of a dry Sponge never wet, though it may be somewhat difficult to get the Tent down, yet by wrying it to and fro, it will enter to the bottom at the last; thus dress the Wound twice every day, mundifying the part every time with white Wine luke-warm: now the reason of using a dry Sponge for a Tent is this, (it being first anointed with the aforefaid Ointment) it will draw and suck up what ever filth or corruption there is within, not leaving any thing

thing that is foul to annoy the part or obstruct the Cure ; as you shall perceive it to heal, so lessen or contract your Tent, and leave not off tending it as long as the Orifice will admit of one ; otherwise by hasty skinning of your wound, you will make it turn into a Fistula.

If your Wound be green and but small or very inconsiderable, then take Soap and unslaked Lime, and work them into body, and having spread it Plaister-wise, first wash the green Wound with white Wine warmed, then lay on the Plaister : you may drie it up presently with a Marrow-bone burnt, and take the powder thereof and straw it on the Wound.

For any Wound whatsoever, old or new, this green Ointment following will prove a speedy and infallible Cure.

Take of Water-betony, Comfry, Mugwort, red Sage, Jerusalem-sage, Sothernwood, Rew and of Rosemary of each two handfuls ; boil all these in a quart of May-butter, with the like quantity of Mutton-suet ; having boiled a while, take it off and strain it, and preserve it for your use ; it will last a whole twelvemonth.

Now if the original of the Wound be some old Impostumation, then your best way will be to take three great Onions, and taking out the Cores, put in the room of them some Bay-salt, and a little Saffron, and so roast them in hot Embers, and being hot lay them Plaister-wise to the Wound, laying on fresh every day till you have healed the Wound.

If you find there be too great a resort and conflux of humours to the Wound you would

heal with all convenient speed; then take two pints of Tartar, and put therein the quantity of an Egg of Bole-armoniack, an handful of Bay-salt, an handful of great Bur-dock-leaves or the roots, wash the swelled places round about every day, and this will divert the humours and facilitate the Cure.

This is another most excellent Defensive, which will repell those humours that hinder the healing of the Wound: Take a pint of Verjuice, and infuse therein three penniworth of Camphire cut very small; boil them together near half an hour, (you may double or treble the quantity) and when it is cold preserve it for your use; wash the Wound with this daily.

If the upper skin of the wound be putrified, and you would have it removed; then take a Plaister of Cow-dung boiled in milk, and lay it to the Wound, and in a day and a night it will not leave any thing vile or superfluous about the Wound.

If an Horse hath received a Wound about the Belly, so that the flesh is very much rent; then take a pint of white Wine-vinegar, the sharpest that is to be gotten, and boil in it a quarter of a pound of Bole-armoniack; having boiled a little while, take it off, and then put therein a small quantity of fresh Butter and bathe the place grieved once in two days.

If your Horse be staked, or wounded with a Fork; first wash the Wound very well with Butter melted and some Vinegar mixt therewith; then take a Clout tied to a stick and dipt in Linseed-oil and run to the bottom of the Wound; anoint

anoint it well, and in a little time this alone will cure it; if perchance the wind should get into it, so as to make it swell, then anoint the swelling with the Oil of Populeon.

To conclude, take some general Receipts for the Cure of all sorts of Wounds whatsoever, according to the practice and experience of ancient and modern Farriers.

For the Cure of any Wound whatsoever, take four Ounces of Butter, Tar and black Soap of each two ounces, with a little Turpentine; boil all these together, excepting the Soap only, which you must put in after the rest are off the fire; with this Ointment dress any Cut whatever.

Another.

Take Wormwood, Marjoram, Pimpernel, Calamint, Olibanum, and beat them all into fine powder; then take Wax and Barrows-grease and boil them on a soft fire to an Ointment, and with this dress the Wound.

Another.

This I shall commend to you from my own experience; Take Turpentine, Honey, Hogs-grease, Wax and Sheep-suet of each an equal quantity; melt them well together till they become a Salve; but if the Horse be staked, as I said before, then cast him, and pour into his Wound Butter scalding hot, letting him lie so long till you know it is gone down into the bottom of the wound; and do this once a day.

If you would keep a Wound open, you need do no more than put in the powder of green
Copperas;

Copperas ; but if you would make a speedy Cure of it, then take Wheat-flower and Honey well beaten together to a Salve and that will do it, observing to dress the Wound once a day therewith.

Wind-galls.

The Wind-gall is a little Bladder full of corrupt jelly, growing on each side of the Master-fnew of the Leg a little above the Pastern, these Bladders being not always of one size, nor of equal number ; in the Summer time, when the Weather is hot, and the ways by the heat of the Sun adusted, these Wind-galls do so afflict Horses that they are not able to go without halting, and perform their journey with much labour and pain.

The Causes whence they proceed are excessive labour and pains taking in the heat of Summer, causing the dissolution of some humours to flow into the concav'd places about the nether joints, and there they settle and congeal, being only covered over with a thin skin like a Bladder.

For the Cure take this Balm, which you must make thus : Take half a pound of the best Piece-grease, and having melted it, take it off, and put it into three ounces of the Oil of Spike, and one ounce of the Oil of Origanum ; incorporate these together, and preserve it in a Gallipot for your use.

When you have occasion to make use hereof, make it very hot and rub the Sorrance therewith, chafing it in with Elbow grease, and to help your pains taking, hold a bar of hot Iron
before

before the part; do thus but once in two days, though you may rub with your hand the part twice a day.

Another excellent Receipt for the same.

First heat the Wind-gall with an hot Pressing-iron; then with your Fleim vent it in several places; then take half a spoonful of Nerve-oil, a spoonful of Salt, a penny weight of Verdigrise and the White of an Egg; beat all to a Salve, and dipping Flax therein apply it to the grief.

In former times Farriers were wont to take a Knife and open it to the length of a Bean, piercing no further than through the skin, that thereby they might thrust out the Jelly, which is like the White of an Egg, then take the Yolk of an Egg and as much Oil de Bay as may equalize a French Nut, and by mixing them make a Plaister, and apply it to the Sore; the Cure is effected in three or four days.

Those in our later times take up the Master-vein, on the inside of his Legs, suffering him to bleed only from below; then having put up the Vein, cover all his Leg over with a Plaister of Wine-lees and Wheat-flower mingled together, and rowl it with a long Rowler, dressing him thus once a day.

Others take the roots of Cummin, and beat them well with Salt, and lay that to the Wind-gall. Or take an ounce of white Wax, and the like quantity of Rozin, two ounces of raw Honey, three ounces of Swines-grease, two ounces of the Oil of Yolks of Eggs, five ounces of Oil de Bay; mix these together and strain them, then

then rub herewith the Wind-gall, chafing it in, and if you make it sink in with an hot Iron it will be the better, and will speedily cure the Wind-gall; this I have experienced, and find it to be an excellent Remedy for a Wind-gall.

I will add but one more, and I have done, which is this: with a fine Lancet open the Wind-gall, not making the Orifice bigger than what may be convenient to give passage to the white Jelly therein contained; having thrust it forth so that none remain within, lap a wet woollen cloth about the Sorrance, and with a Taylor's Goose rub upon the cloth, till you have made it suck in all the moisture from the Wind-gall, so that the Wind-gall be completely dry; then take of Pitch, Rozin and Mastich of each an equal quantity, and being very hot daub it all over the Wind-gall, clapping good store of floss upon it of the same colour the Horse is of; then either let him run to grass or stay at home, it is indifferent, so that you let the Plaister stay on till it fall off by its own accord, and the Cure will be completed.

By way of caution, take this for a safe Rule, which if not observed will prove dangerous; use neither Arsnick nor Resalgar to a Wind-gall, for if you do, the Wind-gall may disappear for a time, but it will return again, neither must you burn much, and pray forbear to make any great Incision, for any of these will so convert into hardness the soft substance of the Wind-gall, that the Horse will become incurably lame.

White-water how to make it.

Because, in several places of this Book, the
white

white Water is made mention of, and prescribed to be drunk in physicking when other Waters are forbidden, unless a warm Mash, or so, I thought good in this place to give you an account what it is; to say the truth, it is nothing else but insipid water made hot in a clean Kettle, and being hot enough, it is my custom to put therein a quantity of Wheat-bran, or Barley-bran will do as well,

Now the reason why I would have this white Water used in the administration of Physick is upon a triple account; first to prevent giving cold water to drink, which may prove dangerous: next, Mashs are not always to be had, or not so proper for the Malady; and lastly, to keep his bodily heat from being disturbed, and therefore you must give him this white Water blood-warm.

Weakness in the Back.

I have already treated of some sort of weaknesses hapning to an Horses back, but what I shall now speak of differs from them all; for this weakness is a kind of biting or fretting of the Reins, occasioned by the conflux of many malignant humours flowing abundantly to that place, depriving the hinder parts of the Horse both of feeling and strength, in such grievous manner, that the Horse cannot keep his feet, but will immediately fall to the ground; when they overflow very much, they will make resort to the Heart, and will so suffocate the same, as to procure sudden death, or at least death in four hours time.

The most approved Remedy that I can hear of is,

is, to take good store of blood from the Neck-vein, after that draw his back with an hot Iron, right out on both sides of the Ridge of his back from the pitch of the Buttock unto an handful within the Saddle, and then again overthwart, and let every line be an inch one from the other, but do not let the strokes be deep, and no more burnt than that each may look yellow; having so done, cause him to swim in some deep pond or river, then rowel him upon the Haunches, near unto the Huckle-bones; after this anoint the Sorrance with Hogs-grease, and three-leaved grafs stamped together; you must continue anointing him herewith till his Back be perfectly cured.

Water-farcion.

An Horfe comes often to be troubled with the Water-farcion by his mere feeding only, that is to say, in low Marshy watry grounds, and by his grazing in places where the grafs grows but a little above the surface of the water, whereby he cannot but lick up the water as he feedeth, and hence comes the swelling that is so often seen about an Horfe's chaps and belly.

The Cure must be wrought thus: Take an Iron made into the fashion of a Fleim, and heating it red hot, strike through the skin and no further upon the swelling, but no where else, and let those pricks be several; from each stroke or prick you shall see issue a great quantity of yellow grey oily water: having let it run a while, wash it with Chamber-lye and Salt, as hot as the Horfe can indure it; thus wash the water Farction but four or five times and it will certainly cure it.

This

This washing serves for an ordinary swelling, but if the swelling be very great, as it often happens, then take strong stale Urine, Salt and Bole-armoniack the quantity of a large Nutmeg, and having boiled them together wash the Sorrance therewith.

The Signs to know this Water-farcy from a Pocky-farcy are these, the swelling will be in great bags as big as a two-penny Loaf, sometimes under his belly, at other times under his jaws, and about his chaps. Where note the more you work any Horse that is troubled with any sort of Farcy, the sooner you shall complete the Cure, and the Horse will thrive the better.

And you need not to fear working your farcied Horse with another; but let them neither stand nor feed together.

There is besides this Water-farcy a Button-farcy, and the signs to distinguish it from any other sort are bunches and knots, lying in burbles in the skin, some as big as Cherry-stones, others as big as Hazel-nuts.

The Cure must be effected after this manner; first take good store of blood from both sides the Horses Neck; having so done, take some Housleek; beat it and strain it through a fine linnen cloth, and the juice thereof convey into his ears; then take an ounce of Aristolochia and beat it small or grate it, the tops of Rew one handful, Hogs-grease the quantity of an Egg; beat these three last into a Salve, and after the Housleek dividing these into two equal proportions, put the one part into one ear, and the other part into the other ear; and having put some wool after
it

it to keep in the Medicine; stich up the ears with a needle; then with the point of your Incision-knife make a small hole in his forehead, and then with your Cornet raise the skin from his forehead the breadth of your hand round about the hole; then take a red Dock-root and slice it, and put three pieces thereof into the hole, which will draw a great deal of putrefaction from it, and that very putrefaction or corruption that comes from it will scald the hair away where it runs; when the strength of the root is gone, it will drop out of it self, and when it is dropt out, anoint the place with fresh Butter, and then clap thereon a Paister of Burgundy-pitch to keep out the wind; let him, after this, stand upon the bit seven or eight hours, and then shall you see him foam and champ as if he were ridden, let what you put into his ears stay there eight and forty hours; taking this course, the knobs or knots will fall in a very little time, and the hair will come again on the forehead.

Wens in the Neck.

I have treated somewhat already of Wens, but nothing of Wens in the Neck; these Wens are bunches or kernels upon the skin, being a superfluous excrescence, the inside whereof is sometimes grissly, sometimes spongy, and sometimes yellow, like rusty Bacon, with some white grains intermixt; their magnitude is uncertain, sometimes great and sometimes small, and are sometimes painful and sometimes not at all.

They are caused several ways: sometimes they proceed from cold, or drinking extraordinary cold water; but principally they are occasion-

ed by pinching or galling of an Halter or Coller.

The Cure is thus : Take an hot Iron, and therewith burn away all superfluous flesh ; then heal up the sore with the powder of Honey and Lime mixt together ; this is a very speedy Cure.

The Remedy that is generally practised is this ; Take of Mallows, Sage, and red Nettles of each one handful ; boil them in running water, and put thereunto a little Butter and Honey ; when you have so boiled the herbs that they become soft, take them out and bruise them very well ; then add thereunto Oil de Bay two ounces, and of Hogs grease two ounces ; warm these together over a fire, and having thoroughly incorporated them together, spread it on a piece of Leather, about the bigness of the Wen, and lay it thereunto as hot as the Horse can endure it : every day lay on a fresh Plaister for nine days together ; if it come not to suppuration in that time, lance it from the midst of the Wen downwards ; so deep that the corruption may be discovered and let out ; that done, heal it up thus :

Take of Turpentine four ounces, and having washed it nine times in fair water, mingle therewith the Yolk of an Egg and some English Saffron beaten to powder, then take a Tent of Flax, and dipping it into this Ointment, tent the Sorrance therewith.

Yellows vide Glanders.

Tard Maturing.

The Yard of an Horse will often matter by over spending in the covering Mares, and by his

his own heat it will turn into the Running of the Reins.

The signs of this distemper are the swelling of his Yard, dropping with yellow matter, and when he offers to stale it is with great difficulty and pain.

For the Cure, you must first purge him very well, then take Roch Allom one ounce, and white one pint, boil them till the Allom be dissolved, then inject this with a Syringe thrust up into the Yard a considerable way, this must be done three or four times a day, and it will be a cure.

If his Yard be sur'd and foul so that he pisseth in the Cod, take fresh Butter and White-wine-Vinegar and melt it, then draw out his Yard, doing off the filth with your hand, and then wash it clean with the Vinegar and Butter, and squirt some thereof into the Yard with a Syringe. *Probatum.*

CHAP. XXVI.

How to make an old Horse seem young.

IF you have an old Horse you have a desire to part withall, and would sell him for a good price, first put him into good case, then next counterfeit the mark in his mouth, which you may do thus: take a small Iron about the thickness of a Goose quill, or not so thick, and heating it red hot burn a little black hole in the tops of the

the two outmost teeth, of each side the neather chap before next the Tusshes, and then with an Awl blade prick it, making the shell fine and thin, then with a sharp scraping Iron make all his Teeth white and clean; having done this, take a fine Lancet, and above the hollow of the Horses eyes which are shrunk down, make a little hole only through the skin, and raising it up put in a quill that is very small, as a Duck or Ravens quill, and then blow the skin full of wind till all the hollownes be filled up; then taking out the quill, lay your finger on the hole a little while, and the wind will stay in, by which means to all outward appearance the Horse will seem but six years old at the utmost.

How to make Hair slick and smooth, and though hard and rough before, how to make it even and soft.

If you would speedily make an Horses coat smooth, slick, soft, and shining, be sure that you first with good store of cloathing keep the Horse warm at heart; for this you must observe, that the least internal cold will so operate on the external parts of an Horses body, that the hair will stare after a very strange manner; next cause him to sweat often, for that will raise up the dust and filth, which causeth his coat to be both foul and hard. Observe, when your Horse is in his greatest sweat, take an old blade of a sword or Sythe, and turning the edge towards the hair, scrape or curty away all the white foam, sweat, or whatsoever filth shall be raised up, by so doing in a very little time you will cause his coat to be both smooth and even.

Or you may effect your desires this way, when at any time you shall have occasion to open a Vein preserve some of your Horses blood, and therewith rub him all over, letting the blood to remain on his coat eight and forty hours, then curry and dress him well, and this will not only make the hair lye even, but shine like Jet.

How to take off Hair from any part of an Horse.

Take half a pound of unsleckt Lime, and boil it till a fourth part be consumed, then put thereunto an Ounce of Orpiment, then take hereof and spread it on Leather, and lay it to that part of the Horse from whence you would have hair taken, this in six hours will take the hair quite away.

Or you may take Rust and Orpiment, and whilst it is scalding hot wash the part therewith, and in a very little time the hair will fall away.

There may be necessary occasions for the use of either of these medicines, but I would not advise you to abuse it as some have done, and have been justly hanged for their pains, that is, they have by these means taken out a star in the forehead of an Horse they have stoln, or some observable mark about his body, and have made hair grow of another colour in the place, by which means the right owner knew not his own Horses when he saw them. See more of this in the foregoing Sections of making artificial Stars.

How to hinder an Horse from neighing either at home or abroad.

Give me leave to tell you that the art of keeping of an Horse from neighing at any time is of excellent use, especially when upon service in the Wars

Wars you would not be discovered by the Horses neighing or making a noise; thus it is done, take a woollen cloth, and tye it fast in many folds about the midst of your Horses tongue, and believe this, if not from my experience, yet from your own you may, as long as the tongue is so tyed, so long will the Horse be restrained from neighing or making any extraordinary noise with his voice.

How to make a tired Jade go forward.

It is a very usual thing for an Horse of a naughty nature, and dull spirit to be soon restiff, or so tired that he will not go one foot farther, though it be not on a journey; nay sometimes this ill quality proceedeth from a certain sullenness: to cure him of this fault make a running suickle of a small cord, and put it about his Cods and Stones, so that it may not easily slip, then draw the rest of the cord between the girths and the Horses body, bringing it up just between the Horses fore legs, and as you sit in the saddle hold the end of the cord in your hand, when you perceive him to begin to grow restiff, then by pulling the cord, cramp him by the Stones, and by that means you will force him to go forward, and by thus using him fourteen or fifteen days he will lose that evil quality of standing stock still.

If your Horse upon the road begin to falter and will not go forward, take two or three small pebbles, and put them into each ear, and you shall find that he will speedily mend his pace;

But if you would preserve your Horse from tiring, after the first days journey, coming to your Inn at night cause him first to be very well rubbed

bed down, then take a quart of strong Ale, and put therein an Ounce of very fine powder of Elicampane, and having brewed them together, give it your Horse for to drink, in the morning provender him very well, and give him withall some more of the Elicampane.

I have known those who have only tyed a bunch of Penny-royal to the mouth of a bit or Snaff, and by the comfort that the Horse hath received thereby, he hath performed his journey with wonderful alacrity.

Others take very good Virginia Tobacco, and putting it into a glass close stoppt, dry it against the Sun, then pound it very small, and mingle it with an equal quantity of Cockle shells, then with the Oyl of Dill and Oyl of Cloves, make the powder into Paste, then make it into balls about the bigness of Walnuts, and so keep them close in a Gally pot; when you travel carry some of these with you, and as you find your Horse begin to tyre, give him one thereof at a time.

But the best receipt I have met withal is, when you find your Horse to tire to take off his Saddle, and with an herb called Arsmart rub his back all over very hard; then lay some Arsmart under the Saddle, then ride him gently, and if there be any Vigour left it will make him go on apace.

How to make an Horse to follow his Master, or though he be mixt amongst a multitude, yet to find him out amongst them all, and challenge him.

For an Horse to distinguish his Master amongst a number of people when he gets into the crowd seems

seems a very wonderful thing, and indeed it is no less for an irrational creature so to do, or contrary to the nature of the beast to follow his owner is very strange, yet frequent experience giveth us to understand that it hath been done; and thus you must do, if you would have the like performed.

Take a pound of Oat meal, and put thereto a quarter of a pound of Honey, and half a pound of Lunarce, and make a Cake thereof, and put it into your bosome, as near your Arm pit as you can, then apply your self to some bodily exercise till you sweat, then rub the Cake upon the sweat, having so done, restrain your Horse from all sorts of food for twenty four hours; after the expiration of that time give your Horse the afore mentioned Cake to eat, let him digest it well, and then turn your Horse loose, and you will find that he will follow you; but if you perceive it is but with some indifferency, then you must renew the Philtre, that is to say make another Cake, and doing therewith as you did before, give it him to eat, and then try him again, and then you shall find he will (like a Dog that hath lost his master) hunt you up and down when he hath lost you, and though you should be environed with never so great a multitude he will know you from the rest; every time he thus finds you out spit in his mouth, and anoint his tongue with your Spittle; this will so ingage him as never to forsake you.

How to make an Horse exceeding nimble at the Spur.

If you find your Horse of a dull sloathful nature

ture, or that he is wearied and tyred through travail or some other means, then shave him on both sides, the breadth of the palm of your hand, just upon the spurring places, then with a Lancet make half a dozen small Orifices on both sides, then raising the skin from the flesh, put into each hole some burnt Salt; this will make the sore rankle, and so let it remain three days, then mount him and spur him well in the sore places, after this wash the sore with stale Urine, Salt, and Nettles boiled together, this will cause the spurring places to smart so grievously that he will never abide the spur after.

To make the Sore whole take Honey, and anoint his sides, or rub his sides with the powder of glass and it will work the same effect.

How to make Hair grow soon, thick and long.

To make hair grow long where it is short, thick where it is thin, or very soon in any bare place, is an art that must not be slighted, since the want of hair is a great deformity and eye-sore to any Horse: to the intent you may supply such defects you must take this course: get the Urine of a young Lad or Boy, and therewith first wash the bare place; after that take Lye made of unflecked Lime, Ceruss, and Litharge, and with it wash the aforesaid place often, and it will quickly procure Hair to grow, not only long but thick.

This is an excellent way, but there are several others not much inferiour to it, for variety sake I shall here insert some of the best.

Take Agrimony pounded and infuse it in Goats milk, and therewith wash that place whereon

whereon you would have the Hair speedily to grow.

Or take the Dung of Goats, Allom, Honey, and Swines blood, incorporate these well together by stirring them over a fire, and when well imbodyed, take thereof and anoint the bare place therewith.

Some take Nettle seed bruised, with Honey and Salt mixt; others the root of a white Lilly beaten, and boiled in Oil; others the juice of a long Onion, or the juice of Radishes; others Tar, Oil Olive and Honey boiled together; lastly, others take the foot of a pot or kettle, and mingling it with Oyl and Honey anoint the bare place; but in my opinion, and according to my long experience there is nothing more efficacious for this purpose than to take green Walnut shells and burn them to powder, and mix the powder with Honey, Oil, and Wine, and anointing the place therewith, you will find an increase of hair even to wonder.

How to fatten a lean sickly Jade in a fortnight that he shall yield a good price in the Market, and indifferently well perform a journey, if not too hard ridden.

Since this art of quick fatning poor hunger-starved, sickly, and diseased Horses hath been found out, many and several cheats have thereby been put upon the buyer, purchasing Horses fair to the Eye, which in a little time after have discovered themselves to be what they are, infirm and only boulder'd up by art, and not worth the riding.

The Receipt is thus: take of Wheat meal a
sufficient

sufficient quantity, of Cummin seeds two Ounces, of Anniseeds a quarter of a pound, of Carthamus two drachms, of Brimstone two Ounces, of Sallet Oil a pint and half, a quart of Honey, and of White-Wine a pottle, first take your hard Simples and pulverize them, then commix them with your humid Simples, work them together into a paste, and make thereof balls or loaves as big as a penny white loaf: Mornings and Evenings when you water your Horse dissolve in his cold water one of these balls or loaves, crumbling it between your hands, and let him drink thereof; if you find that he refuse it by being not accustomed to the like taste, let him fast till he be willing to drink thereof, and so will he be glad to take it at last: after twice tasting hereof he will refuse any other liquor for it.

By the way let me tell you, though Jockeys and Horse-courfers make use hereof to cheat and abuse people, yet it is a most soveraign Medicine, not only to fatten any Horse, but is also a most admirable scourer, not only feeding, but cleansing the body from all peccant and malignant humours whatsoever.

What things are to be observed by every Horse-courser before he lay out his money in the purchase of an Horse or Mare.

Mark well the feet of that beast you intend to buy, and see that they be little, for broad feet ever are the tokens of dulness; let his Pasterns be short, his legs large, broad and flat, a thick large breast, with well raised shoulders, and a quick full eye.

With your hand feel between his chaps whether

ther the Horſe hath any Glanders, or that he be not troubled with a Curb, Splent or Spaven, and by the waving of your hand to and fro before his eyes you will ſoon diſcover any impediment in his eyes.

The mark in his mouth will diſcover his age if he be not above ſeven years old, but if that do not viſibly appear, feel all down his Tail, if his Strunt be ſmooth without any knobs at the end you may adventure on him, having not ſeen half his beſt days; but on the contrary, the knobs do ſhow he hath not many good days to come.

Now if you would diſcover any ſecret malady or imperfection lurking internally and not diſcoverable by the eye; then let him run at the halters length till he ſweat, and he will diſcover an old cold by his cough, and by his drawing of his breath, that he is either purſy or ſhort winded, or if he be lame you will find where the grief lieth by the favouring of one leg or other.

Take ſpecial notice when you ride him whether he frequently turn up the white of his Eye, or layeth his Ears to his pole; if he do, my life for yours, he is a ſullen ill conditioned Jade, if he be Wall-eyed he is ſo much the worſe: but if when you come into the ſtable you perceive the Horſe to ſtare nimbly about him ſometimes on this ſide and ſometimes on that, and then again quite behind, it argueth he is lively, full of mettle, and hath a good ſtomach, then take him out and riding him obſerve to turn him as ſhort as you can, by which means you will diſcover whether he be ſwayed in the back or not, and if the hair in the ſpurring place be white, the ſpur hath been often

often used in that place to correct his sloth and heaviness.

The most marketable Horse, and the fittest for all sorts of business is one that freely eats his provender, hath broad loins, strong feet, his pace is easie, his nature gentle, and is swift and light of foot. Now take this for an infallible rule in travail, that if upon some occasion you stop him in his course, he fall a pawing with his foot, it argueth much impatiency in him for being detain'd, and undoubtedly will perform his journey very well.

What is to be observed concerning Mares in general.

First, if you intend your Mare shall go through with her conception, give her convenient rest after her covering, and do not hazard the loss of the seed injected by travel.

Be not over covetous of having too many colts from one Mare if you rate her at a good value, and let her not be covered till she be about five years old, and let it be before the full of the Moon, and when the sign is female if you desire a Male Colt, if a female let the sign be male, and after the full.

To facilitate the conception set the Horse with the Mare two or three days by times, but suffer them not to copulate, only do this to heighten their desire to each other; after this let him cover her, and immediately after he hath withdrawn himself from her, pour a pail of cold water on the ridge of the Mares back, this will make her knit the better, but suffer them not afterwards to come together.

The

The way to know whether your Mare be with Foal is to throw some water into her ear, if she only shake her head and not her body too, she is then with foal, otherwise not.

If you would have your Colts be good Trotters, let your Stallion be of the Neapolitan breed or a Barbary; as for Amblers, there is none better than your Spanish Jennet or the Irish Hobby.

Rules and principles to be observed both in Colts and Horses very remarkable and worthy of due consideration.

Of all beasts whatsoever the Legs of a Colt grow least; wherefore if his Legs be long, you may conclude of the length and height of his stature, and by the bigness of the Legs his strength and greatness is to be known: House not your Colts till they are three years old.

When your Colt is fit to back, take notice if he have a long back; if so, then fit him with a large Saddle, and before you mount him make him thoroughly acquainted with the Saddle, putting it often on, and taking it as often off; girt him by degrees, till you can make him endure a strait girding; let him smell to the Saddle, and dangle the Stirrops, to make him the more familiarly acquainted therewith.

Forget not to anoint your Bit, when you first put it into your Horses mouth with Honey and the powder of Liquorish, or Honey and Salt will do as well; but be sure at no time that you put any Bit or Snaffle into your Horses mouth without washing it.

Mount not your Horses back before you have
the

the Bridle-reins fast in your hand, and do not, when you alight at the brow of an hill, drive your Horse before you, lest you run the hazard of losing the reputation of a prudent Horseman.

If your Horse be fiery and full of metal, do not fret or be angry with him, but win him by patience and fair means; but if you find him dull and sluggish quicken him with your Spur, with this proviso, that having spur'd him much, you will, when you find conveniency, rub his Spurgalls with water and salt.

Now as as to Horses, several Countries produce Horses of different natures: as for example, as Mr. *Markham* observeth, the Greek or Turkish Horse is of an excellent constitution, being swift, bold, well-headed, tall and strong. The Arabian Horse is as swift as the wind and very beautiful to the eye.

The African or Barbary is full of courage, swift and nimble, and will not with the Turkey Horse either deserve or endure much beating. The Friezland Horse is fiery, yet not well conditioned, but as for your Flemish Horse he is the worst of any. I cannot but approve of the Spanish Jennet being very good, swift and light of foot, but the Neapolitan for all uses is most excellent and beautiful; now for great burthens, constant labour and long travel the English Horse exceedeth all that have been named hitherto.

Your Irish Horse is generally well breasted, but I never saw any but what had thin and very uncomely buttocks, being evil-natured, very fallen,

len, weak and unfit for much labour; those that are tolerably good are very scarce through the whole Country.

The most experienced Horsemens observations.

Your Horse being in health, feed him with such dry meats as shall not swell his body, as Straw, which is excellent good to take up the belly of a running Horse, Hay, Oats, sometimes a little Wheat, Beans, Barley, bread made of Beans or Pease, neither are Fitches to be despised, and in the giving them observe this order; first give him some hay, then water, and lastly his grain or provender.

When you are upon a journey, look first to your Horse before you look to your self, seeing that he be well rub'd down, well littered with fresh straw, and be sure that you feed your Horse betimes, for all night, that it may the better concoct, and that he may the sooner take his rest. I would not advise you to give him of Provender a greater quantity than three pints at a time; there is nothing that feeds better and fattens more speedily than bread made either of Beans, Pease or Fitches well cleansed.

If you would have your Horse to feed with an extraordinary appetite, take Wine and Salt and rub his mouth therewith.

In a journey, whether at baiting or at night, coming to your Inn, let not your Horse either eat or drink whilst he is hot, but first let him be reduced to his proper temperament.

In the extremity of heat and cold, the labour of your Horse must be always moderate.

Take not, after travel, the Saddle off your Horses back too suddenly.

What-

What-ever you do, let no Poultry come within your Stable ; for should your Horse lick up a feather, or swallow any of their dung, which casually fell into the Hay or Provender, it is of a dangerous consequence.

Make it frequently your business to ride your Horse on stony ground , for by so doing you will reap the benefit of hardening his Hoofs, which will the better enable him to travel.

Have a care of letting your Horse stand near any Mud-wall, for I have known Horses, not a few, which have coveted to eat thereof to their very great prejudice ; and let his bed be made not of Barley-straw, for some Horses love to eat thereof, which is unwholsome ; but let it be of Wheat, or rather of Oaten Straw ; for that is soft, and if eaten very wholsom.

It is the opinion of all, that to sprinkle water upon the Hay you give your Horse is wholsome, and most sovereign to mingle Fenugreek with his Provender, the first is good for the wind and the latter for the worms.

If your Horse happen to be brought very low and much impoverished by too much labour or some great surfeit, get Mares-milk and give it him eight days together, and you will perceive a very sensible recovery.

The best hours for watering are between seven and eight in the morning, and four and five in the evening.

You are to take notice, that an Horse takes much delight in rubbing and combing, and therein he seems to be sensible what is good for himself ;

for

for it preserves his health, and keeps the strength of body and legs.

In the Canicular or Dog-days, you must have a special care that you do not ride your Horse frequently into the water to qualifie or allay his natural or any other contracted heat.

Be mindful of often picking and cleansing the bottoms of your Horses feet, and stuff them well with Oxe or Cow-dung, and now and then anoint his hoofs with fresh Grease and Turpentine.

When you ride, forget not to look often to your Saddle, and see that it wring or pinch him not, and that his shooes be fast on, and that there be no Gravel, Stub or Nail got into his foot.

Lastly, according to Northern observation, use no other walking than your self upon your Horses back, that is to say, you must ride him gently to his Inn, so cooling him by degrees; when in the Stable, shake Litter under him, and see that every part of his body be rubbed, till it be drie, not omitting his head; then unbridle him, and give him Hay, but slack no girt in two or three hours, and when he drinks, let it be but little for fear of too hasty cooling his Stomach.

Some general Observations on a Smithfield-Jockey.

The *Smithfield* Jockeys, as some sort of Horses, are much the better, either for the breed or Country from whence they came.

There are several Jockeys in every County of
A a *England,*

England, but none so expert as such as were spawned in *Yorkshire*, who have generally such a natural love for their Horses, that their inclinations lead them to ride before they can well go: this makes them generally more knowing in Horses than others, not only as to riding, but as to the several humours and constitutions.

It is proverbially said, that *Shake a Bridle over a Yorkshire-Tike's grave and he will rise again*; I dare not justify the truth hereof, but this I may, That many of them will not long be without an Horse if they have but money enough to purchase a Bridle; as for a Saddle, they can make that themselves, so little (and yet so commodious) that they can carry it in their breeches without discovery.

Further, to prove them Horsemen even from their Cradles; look into the Inns, especially of *London*, and for one Hostler of any other Country, you shall find ten either of *Yorkshire* or *Lancashire*; and they are naturally very subtle and crafty.

To give you a particular account of the humours and practices of these Jockeys and their Hostlers, would be a task which would take up too much time, and would afford matter enough to swell a volume from it self. I shall therefore briefly give you an account of so much as I shall think convenient.

How to cheat by the mark in an Horses mouth.

This Trick is used by Horse-courers to make an artificial mark appear in the Horses mouth, which

which can hardly be discerned from what is real and natural, and thus they do it ; when an Horse is grown very old, they first make him very fat, which they do with much ease and in a short time, either by mingling Carrets among their Oats, or by *Markham's* fatning Balls, or several other ways they have ; and having so done, they then take an Awl or Bodkin, and having wrought the Horses Tooth therewith, they clap in a piece of Sheath ; this will look so like the natural mark that several men of excellent judgment in Horses, nay Horse-courers have been deceived thereby, as *I. P.* and *L. S.* can testify by woful experience, at an Horse-fair in *Northampton-shire*.

How to make a dull heavy, resty Jade so to caper and prance both abroad and in the Stable, as if he were all mettle and spirit.

Your Jockeys have an excellent and present Remedy for a dull and heavy Jade, and that is by beating of him in this manner : they first take him out of the Stable in a morning, and having gotten ready a good Bulls-pizzle or a smart Whip, they beat and whip the Horse unmercifully ; then they turn him into the Stable, and in the after-noon they come to him again, and there beat him again in the same manner as they had done abroad ; and thus they fail not to do twice a day morning and evening for six or seven days ; after this, when ever they come into the Stable, they whip him more or less : the Horse being thus accustomed to continual whipping,

England, but none so expert as such as were spawned in *Yorkshire*, who have generally such a natural love for their Horses, that their inclinations lead them to ride before they can well go: this makes them generally more knowing in Horses than others, not only as to riding, but as to the several humours and constitutions.

It is proverbially said, that *Shake a Bridle over a Yorkshire-Tike's grave and he will rise again*; I dare not justify the truth hereof, but this I may, That many of them will not long be without an Horse if they have but money enough to purchase a Bridle; as for a Saddle, they can make that themselves, so little (and yet so commodious) that they can carry it in their breeches without discovery.

Further, to prove them Horsemen even from their Cradles; look into the Inns, especially of *London*, and for one Hostler of any other Country, you shall find ten either of *Yorkshire* or *Lancashire*; and they are naturally very subtle and crafty.

To give you a particular account of the humours and practices of these Jockeys and their Hostlers, would be a task which would take up too much time, and would afford matter enough to swell a volume from it self. I shall therefore briefly give you an account of so much as I shall think convenient.

How to cheat by the mark in an Horses mouth.

This Trick is used by Horse-courfers to make an artificial mark appear in the Horses mouth, which

which can hardly be discerned from what is real and natural, and thus they do it ; when an Horse is grown very old, they first make him very fat, which they do with much ease and in a short time, either by mingling Carrets among their Oats, or by Markham's fatning Balls, or several other ways they have ; and having so done, they then take an Awl or Bodkin, and having wrought the Horses Tooth therewith, they clasp in a piece of Sheath ; this will look so like the natural mark that several men of excellent judgment in Horses, nay Horse-courers have been deceived thereby, as I. P. and L. S. can testify by woful experience, at an Horse-fair in Northampton-shire.

How to make a dull heavy, resty Jade so to caper and prance both abroad and in the Stable, as if he were all mettle and spirit.

Your Jockeys have an excellent and present Remedy for a dull and heavy Jade, and that is by beating of him in this manner : they first take him out of the Stable in a morning, and having gotten ready a good Bulls-pizzle or a smart Whip, they beat and whip the Horse unmercifully ; then they turn him into the Stable, and in the after-noon they come to him again, and there beat him again in the same manner as they had done abroad ; and thus they fail not to do twice a day morning and evening for six or seven days ; after this, when ever they come into the Stable, they whip him more or less : the Horse being thus accustomed to continual whipping,

ping, will dance and caper when ever he seeth his Master come into the Stable; but the cunning Jockey will never use his whip or rod when he brings any Customer to look upon him, that he may infuse a belief that this prancing is the effect of his great mettle, and not of the fear of punishment.

Besides; that he may thus caper when he is ridd in *Smithfield*, the Boy that rides him (as commonly they make use of such Cattle for their purpose) hath frequently a sling at him before he is put to sale; this makes the poor beast sling and flounce, when the Boy mounts him, as being too sensible of what punishment he is to undergo.

Thus many men are abused; for though the Horse thus prance the length of *Smithfield*, the Buyer will find him in half a score miles riding that he will not stir one foot further.

A way to make an Horse go very merrily without Rod, Whip or Spur, a little way, although he be a mere Jade.

Take a quarter of a peck of Oats, and take the root of Elicampane, and having walsht it very clean, cut it small and mingle it with the Oats, and let him eat hereof the night before your Market; if you add a spoonful of Honey thereunto it will be much better.

The next morning, as he is ready to go out, take a glass full of Sack, and pour one half thereof into one Ear and the other part into the other Ear, and then clap your hands upon his Ears, holding

holding them fast a little time, that he may not shake out the Wine, then letting him go, straight-ways mount him, and he will go for two or three hours as merrily as any Horse whatever. *Probatum.*

The Vulgar Error of the Eel detected, and proved to be a thing false and ridiculous.

In former and later times it hath been believed by some (how prudent I cannot tell) that there was no better way to make a resty dull Jade to prance and caper, than to take a live Eel, and through his mouth convey it down the Horse's belly; I know not many more ways more speedy to dispatch him; for you must not think that the Eel can presently and in an instant pass out of his stomach into his Guts, or if he did, I do but think what woful work he would make there, but much worse in his stomach if he continue there; for certainly his motion would so disturb the vital parts, that it would render him incapable of living two minutes.

How to fatten an Horse speedily, for sale.

I have known some that have made their Horses look plump & fair to the eye, in 14 days, by only mingling Carrets with their Oats; but that which never fails to fatten an Horse speedily for sale is, take of Elicampane, of Cummin-seeds, of Turmeric, of Anniseeds of each two ounces, of Groun-fel an handful; boil these well together with three heads of Garlick cleansed and stamped in a gallon of strong Ale; then strain it well, and give the Horse to drink thereof a quart made

warm in a morning fasting; then ride him till he be well warm'd, then set him up and cover him well, and do thus five or six mornings; after this, for seven or eight days together, take of the fine powder of Elicampane, and the fine powder of Cummin-seed of each a like quantity; mix these well together, and put thereof half an ounce into his Provender, giving him thereof three times a day.

A notable trick of an Horse-courser or Jockey.

Though the story may be old, yet it is new to those who never heard it, and I can assure you it is very true.

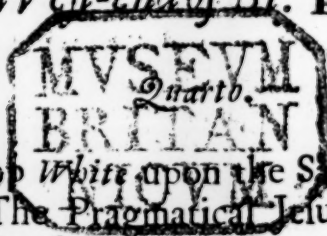
A Jockey had an Horse which was comely enough to fight, yet he could not put him off; he used several projects, but none would take; as first, he would often cheapen his own Horse, and often bid within ten shillings of the price he was profer'd for, which the Rider was by agreement to refuse, to make others the more eager to buy him: when that would not do, he got some friends to cheapen his Horse by turns, and yet this procured never a Chapman; having tried several other ways, at length he pitch'd on this: he sets up his Horse till friday the next Market-day for *Smithfield*; the day being come, he got up before Sun-rising, and having gotten a couple of his Confederates mounted as he was, as soon as the Sun appeared, (which was in the midst of Summer) he rode from the Sun in *Charterhouse-lane* to the Sun in *Aldersgate-street*, and from thence to the Bell-Inn, and there rested till the Sun

Sun was gone down, and then rides him through *Smithfield* (having somewhat heated him, to make him look somewhat like a Traveller) a Gentleman seeing the Horse, calls the Rider, and demands the price of his Horse; truly Sir, said he, I am very loth to sell my Horse, but were I minded so to do, this is no proper time; for I protest, said the Jockey, I have rid him this very day from Sun to Sun and never drew bit, my occasions being very urgent; and if you will not believe it, there are now two Gentlemen (meaning his own Comerades) at the Bell-Inn in *Aldersgate* will justify it, this made the Gentleman so eager (finding the price much lower than he imagined, and the Horse so well after so long travel and hunger) that he bought him; but in six days after he could not ride him the length of *Long-lane*.

F I N I S.



*Books Printed for , or Sold by
Simon Miller at the Star, at
the West-end of St. Paul's.*



Bishop *White* upon the Sabbath.
The Pragmatical Jesuit, a Play,
by *Richard Carpenter*.

The Life and Death of the Valiant
and Renowned Sir *Francis Drake*, his
Voyages and Discoveries in the West-
Indies and about the World, with his
Noble and Heroick Acts : By *Samuel
Clarke*, late Minister of *Bennet-Finck*,
London.

The Life and Death of *William* the
Conquerour, King of *England* and Duke
of *Normandy*; by *Samuel Clarke*.

Bagshaw of Christ and Antichrist.

Astrology Theologiz'd : Shewing by
the Light of Nature what influences the
Stars have upon Mens bodies, and how
the

Books Printed for, &c.

the same may be diverted and avoided:

Large Octavo:

The Rights of the Crown of *England*, as it is established by Law; by *E. Bagshaw* of the Inner Temple, Esq;

An Enchiridion of Fortification.

Nomenclatura brevis in usum Scholæ Westmonasteriensis.

The English Horseman and complete Farrier; directing all Gentlemen and others, how to breed, feed, ride and diet all kind of Horses, whether for War, Race or other service; with a discovery of the Causes, Signs and Cures of all Diseases both Internal and External incident to Horses, Alphabetically digested; with the Humours of a *Smithfield* Jockey. By *Robert Almond* a well know and skilful Farrier of the City of *London*, practising therein above forty five years.

The Loyal Prophet, a Sermon preached at the Summer Assizes at *York* in Anno 1668. by *William Bramhall*, Rector of *Gouldsbrough*, and one of his Majestie's Chaplains.

Small

Books Printed for,

Small Octavo.

The Midwives Book, or the whole Art of Midwifry discovered, directing Child-bearing Women how to behave themselves in their Conception, Bearing, Breeding and Nurfing of Children : In six Books, *viz.* 1. An Anatomical Description of the Parts of Men and Women. 2. What is requisite for Procreation : Signs of a Woman being with Child, and whether it be male or female, and how the Child is formed in the Womb. 3. The Causes and hinderance of Conception and Barrenness, and of the pains and difficulties of Childbearing, with their causes, signs, and cures. 4. Rules to know when a Woman is near her Labour, and when she is near Conception, and how to order the Child when Born. 5. How to order Women in Childbirth, and of several Diseases and Cures for Women in that condition. 6. Of Diseases incident to Women after Conception : Rules for the choice of a Nurse ; her Office, with proper Cures for all diseases incident to young Children. By Mrs. *Jane Sharpe*, practitioner in the Art of Midwifry above thirty years.

Merry

and Sold by Simon Miller.

Merry Drollery complete, in two parts ;
or a Collection of Jovial Poems, Merry
Songs, Witty Drolleries; intermixt with
pleasant Catches, collected by *W. N. C. B.*
R. S. I. G. Lovers of Wit.

Natural and Artificial Conclusions.

Daphnis and Chloe a pleasant Romance.

Boteler of War.

Ramsay of Poysons.

Shepard of the Regulation of the Law.

Knowls Rudiments of the Hebrew
Tongue.

Herbert's Childbearing Woman ; or
Devotions, Meditations and Prayers for
Women in that Condition.

The Rebellion of the rude Multitude
under *Wat Tyler*, parallel'd with the late
inhumane Rebellion against *K. Charles*
the First.

The Rebels Arraignment, Conviction
and Execution in three Sermons, By *Jo.*
Brookbancke.

The Death of *Charles* the First lament-
ed, and the Restoration of *Charles* the
Second congratulated by *William Lang-*
ley.

The King of *Spain's* Cabinet Counsel
divulged.

A Description of *Jerusalem*, as it flour-
ished

Books Printed for,

ished in the time of Christ.

Observationes & Experientiae de Febribus, Authore Gulielmo Drageo Medico.

Nonnihil de Febribus, Authore Gulielmo Statholmo Medico.

Divine Poems by *A. Nasmyth.*

The Life of Dr. *Tho. Morton* late B^p. of *Duresme.*

Morison on the Covenant.

The Miraculous Visions of *R. Wortley*, Minister of *Edgureth* in *Bedford-shire.*

A Discourse of the Piety and Charity of elder Times and Christians, parallel'd to the Members of the Church of *England*, by *E. Waterhouse* Esquire.

Large Twelves.

The Moral Practice of the Jesuits, demonstrated by many remarkable Histories of their Actions in all parts of the World; Collected either from Books of the greatest Authority, or most certain and unquestionable Records and Memorials; by the Doctors of the *Sorbon.*

Oxford Jest's Refined and Enlarged.

Smith's Practice of Physick.

The Duty of every one that will be saved; being Rules, Precepts, Promises
and

and Sold by Simon Miller.

and Examples, directing all Persons, of what degree soever, how to govern their Passions, and to live vertuously and soberly in the World.

The Spiritual Chymist, or six Decads of Divine Meditations on several Subjects, with a short Account of the Authors Life ; by *William Spurstow*, D. D. sometime Minister of the Gospel at *Hackney*, near *London*.

Witty Apothegms, delivered at several times by *K. James*, *K. Charles I.* the *M. of Worcester*, the *Lord Bacon* and *Sir Tho. More*.

Mans Master-piece ; or Contemplations and Meditations on several occasions, by *Sir Peter Temple*.

Small Twelves.

A new Method of Preserving and Restoring Health by the Vertue of Coral and Steel.

A Help to Prayer.

The Understanding Christian's Duty worthily to commemorate the Death of Christ in the blessed Sacrament of the Lord's Supper, prest from *1 Cor. 11. 28.*

The Pious Prentice ; or Advice to the Apprentices

Books Printed for, &c.

Apprentices of *London*, concerning their
behaviour to God, their Masters, and
themselves: By *A. Jackson*.

The King Triumphant, or the Rebels
Ruin'd, by Capt. *N. Foster*.

F I N I S.

For a Horse Cough.

Take 2 new layd Eggs, put them in a
Quart of Verjuice; bury them in Dung
in an earthen pot a yard deep 24 Hours.
Give this Drench to the Horse in the Morning.

Rx Pil. de Cynoglossa.

The English Horfman & Farrier